

GENESIS DRIVER INFORMATION SYSTEM



GENESIS

**DRIVER INFORMATION SYSTEM
BH 10MY DIS**

User's Manual

We wish you much enjoyment with your Driver Information System.

Please familiarize yourself with the Driver Information System and read the user manual before using the system. You will thus be able to make better use of your system and avoid endangering yourself and others.

Please understand that actual road status may be different from the map screens in this manual due to future updates and changes of the map content.

The colors on screen elements represented in this manual may be different from actual color on the display due to the illumination from the printing ink.

Hyundai is constantly updating the system to the latest technological standards and therefore retains the right to implement changes in design, equipment and technology.

Introduction	9	Menu system	24	Multicasting	40
Chapters in this manual	9	Composition of the main menu	24	HD Radio™ signal delay	40
Symbols	11	Calling up main functions	25	Automatic switching between	
General symbols	11	BACK function	26	digital and analog broadcasting	41
Safety instructions	11	Operating example for the		Text based information	41
Operational safety	12	FM main menu	27	General operation	42
Safety instructions	12	Switching to FM mode	27	Switching to FM or AM mode	42
Information about the laser used	14	Top status line	27	Switching mode/band	43
Information about the operating		Bottom status line	27	Tuning to stations	44
temperature range	14	Main menu, content area and		Overview	44
Intended purpose	14	Options menu	28	Tuning to a station via	
Servicing	15	Lists	29	the station list	44
Function restrictions		Abbreviated list entries	30	Tuning to a station via	
when driving the vehicle	15	Basic functions	31	a station search	45
Federal Communications Commission		Switching the system on	31	Tuning to a station via	
(FCC) and Industry Canada (IC)		Switching the system off	31	manual tuning	46
compliance statement	15	Switching audio/video		Tuning to a station via the presets	47
Bluetooth ® information	15	playback on/off	32	Tuning to a station via	
Maintenance	16	Setting the volume	33	the Scan function	47
Warranty	16	Switching to FM1/FM2 or AM mode		Storing stations	49
		and switching radio band	33	Storing stations using the station	
		Audio settings	33	presets	49
		Video settings	37	Storing stations using the	
				Tune & Seek menu	50
Functional introduction	17	FM and AM mode	39	Showing station details	51
System features	18	HD Radio (TM) information	40	Showing details of the currently	
System components	19	Licensing information	40	tuned HD Radio™ station	51
Headunit	19	Availability information	40		
Display	19	What is HD Radio™ technology?	40		
Central control panel	20				
Function buttons on the					
steering wheel	22				

Table of contents

Audio and FM/AM HD Radio™ settings	52	Storing a channel using the channel list	64	Supported discs	75
Audio settings	52	Storing a channel using the category list	65	Permissible file systems	75
FM HD Radio™ settings	52	Settings	66	Multisession CDs	75
AM HD Radio™ setting	54	Overview	66	Mixed Mode CD/CD-Extra	75
<hr/>		Opening the XM® Radio settings menu	66	MP3 or wma discs	75
XM Satellite Radio mode	55	Closing the XM® Radio settings menu	66	Note on copyright	77
XM Satellite Radio information/General operation	56	Setting the display in the upper status line	66	Notes on discs	77
XM® Satellite Radio information	56	Setting the category filter for the channel list	67	Notes on the care of discs	78
General operation	57	Setting the category search	68	Notes on playback	78
Tuning to channels	58	Status screens and messages	69	Loading the disc changer magazine	79
Overview	58	Status screen		Safety instruction	79
Tuning to a channel using the Tune & Seek menu	58	Channel Not Authorized	69	General information	79
Tuning to a channel using the channel presets	59	Status screen No Signal	69	Loading the first available empty magazine compartment	79
Tuning to a channel using the Scan function	60	Status screen Loading	69	Loading a specific empty magazine compartment	80
Tuning to a channel using the channel list	61	Status screen		Loading all empty magazine compartments	81
Tuning to a channel using the category list	61	Channel Not Available	70	Ejecting the disc changer magazine	82
Storing channels	63	Status screen Check Antenna	70	Ejecting the magazine compartment containing the last disc played	82
Overview	63	Status screen Channel Off Air	71	Ejecting a specific magazine compartment	82
Storing a channel using the Tune & Seek menu	63	<hr/>		Ejecting all magazine compartments	83
Storing a channel using the channel presets	64	DISC mode	73	Audio disc playback	84
		General information	74	Switching to DISC mode and playing discs	84
		Safety instructions	74	DISC main menu	84
		License notice	74	Selecting and playing discs	87
		Automatic video lock-out	74		

Pausing or resuming playback	88	Video CD playback	108	iPod® menu	130
Selecting tracks	88	Functional restrictions	108	Pausing or resuming playback	131
Selecting folders and MP3 or wma tracks	88	Notes on PBC (PlayBack Control).	108	Selecting a track	132
Selecting a group	89	Switching to DISC mode and playing discs	108	Fast forwarding/reversing	133
Fast forwarding/reversing	89	DISC main menu	109	Repeating tracks	133
Repeating tracks or folders	90	Selecting and playing discs	110	Random setting	134
Random play	90	Selecting tracks	110	Audio settings	135
Scan function	92	Video settings	111	USB playback	136
Audio settings	93	Audio settings	111	Starting playback	136
Video DVD playback	94	Native video CD menu	111	AUX main menu during USB playback	136
Video DVD playback conditions	94	On-screen menu	114	Selecting folders and tracks	138
Functional restrictions	95			Skipping tracks forward/back	138
Switching to DISC mode and playing discs	95	AUX mode	119	Fast forwarding/reversing	138
DISC main menu	96	General information	120	Repeating tracks or folders	139
Selecting chapters	97	Trademarks	120	Random play	139
Skipping chapters forward/back	98	Note on copyright	120	Scan function	141
Title list	98	Signal sources	121	Audio settings	142
Subtitle	98	Supported signal sources	121	AUX playback	143
Audio track	98	Connecting signal sources	123	Automatic video lock-out	143
Viewing angle	98	General operation	127	Starting playback	143
Audio settings	98	Switching to AUX mode	127	Opening/closing the AUX main menu during playback	144
Video settings	98	Opening the AUX main menu	127	Audio settings	144
Language settings	100	Selecting a signal source	128	Video settings	144
Native DVD menu	101	iPod® playback	129		
On-screen menu	105	Starting playback	129		
		AUX main menu during iPod® playback	129		

Table of contents

PHONE	149	Settings	167	Special functions for two calls	185
General information	150	Settings menu	167	Overview	185
Safety instructions	150	Switching autoconnection function		Calling a second party	185
General information	150	on/off	167	Accepting/rejecting a call-waiting	
PHONE main menu	152	Showing the device info	168	call	186
Available functions	152	Initialization functions	168	Swapping between two calls	186
Opening the PHONE main menu	152	Changing the passkey	171	Ending the active call	187
Pairing/connecting/disconnecting a		Initiating a call/accepting or		Phonebook	188
mobile phone	153	rejecting a call	173	General information	188
General	153	Initiating an outgoing call	173	Calling up the phonebook	188
Activating Bluetooth ® on the		Accepting/rejecting an incoming		Downloading the phonebook	189
mobile phone	153	call	175	Creating a new entry	190
Pairing a mobile phone	153	Call history list	176	Scrolling through the phonebook	192
Connecting a mobile phone	156	General Information	176	Editing an entry	192
Terminating a connection	158	Calling up the call history list	176	Searching for an entry	194
Dropped connection	160	Initiating a call to a call history list		Initiating a call to an entry	196
Options	161	entry	177	Deleting phonebook entries	198
Options menu	161	Saving a list entry to the		Displaying details on an entry	199
Calling up the device list	161	phonebook	178		
Renaming a phone	161	Deleting an individual list entry	178	Navigation	201
Setting the default phone	163	Deleting all list entries	179	General information	202
Connecting/Disconnecting a		Functions during a call	181	Safety instructions	202
mobile phone	163	Overview	181	Digital map	202
Deleting a pairing	164	Call display	181	GPS reception	202
Deleting all pairings	165	Mute the microphone	182	Route guidance after vehicle	
Showing details	166	Switching private mode on/off	182	transport	203
		Holding and reactivating a call	183	Basic functions	204
		Sending DTMF tones	183	Calling up the map display and	
		Ending a call	184	switching to Navigation mode	204

Position/scroll mode within the map display	204	Entering an emergency destination	228	Functions independent of route guidance	243
Information on the current vehicle position	206	Entering a destination via the map	229	Freeway mode	243
Moving the map/setting the map scale	206	Functions after entering the destination	230	Turn List	243
Guidance volume settings	207	Options after entering the destination	230	Initiating a phone call to a POI . . .	244
Navigation main menu	209	Set/replace destination	230	Traffic information	245
Opening the Navigation main menu	209	Add waypoint	230	Saving/deleting destinations in the Address Book	247
Entering destinations	210	Add to Address Book	231	Address Book categories	247
Available options	210	Dial number	231	Entering a destination via the map and saving it	247
Entering a destination via the address	210	Adjust position	231	Entering the destination by conventional means and saving it .	248
Entering a destination via the Previous Destinations	215	Route calculation	232	Deleting destinations	251
Entering a destination via Intersection input	215	Route guidance	235	Editing Address Book entries	254
Entering a POI destination via POI name	216	Safety instructions	235	Selecting an Address Book entry .	254
Entering a POI destination via POI category	220	General information	235	Editing an entry	254
Entering a POI destination via POI phone number	223	Audible driving recommendations .	235	Settings	258
Entering a POI destination via a vicinity search	224	Route guidance displays	235	Opening the Settings menu	258
Entering a destination via the Address Book	227	Functions during route guidance	237	Map display settings	258
		Suspending route guidance	237	Ferry preference settings	260
		Resuming route guidance	237	Avoid Area settings	260
		Show route	237	Displaying navigation information .	264
		Reroute/detour	238	Reset function	264
		Switching the remaining distance/journey time display	239	North up view/Heading up view . .	265
		Change route	239	Map mode	265

Table of contents

Voice control	267	Selecting stations/channels stored in the presets	274	Navigation mode	284
General information	268	Selecting channels (XM® tuner mode only)	274	Calling up Navigation mode	284
Safety instruction	268	Scan function (FM and AM tuner mode only)	275	Navigation mode help	284
Symbols	268	Operating examples	275	Entering a destination	284
Operating language	268	DISC and AUX mode	276	Entering a destination stored in the Address Book	285
General notes on operation	268	Calling up DISC or AUX mode	276	Suspending route guidance	285
Voice input	269	DISC/AUX mode help	276	Resuming route guidance	285
General operation	269	Next/previous disc	276	Muting and reactivating navigation announcements	286
Commands	270	Selecting a disc directly	276	Redefining a navigation route	286
Skipping sections of a dialog	271	Next/previous folder	277	Setting a detour	286
Configuring voice control	271	Skipping tracks forwards/backwards	277	Map display	286
Help function (teleprompter)	271	Selecting a track directly	277	Switching traffic information on/off	287
Operating picklists	272	Random Song/Album function	277	Operating examples	287
Tuner mode (FM, AM and XM Satellite Radio)	273	Operating examples	277	Various commands	292
Calling up tuner mode	273	PHONE mode	279	Various commands help	292
Tuner mode help	273	Calling up PHONE mode	279	Other available commands	292
Setting the waveband	273	Phone help	279	Command overview	293
Setting the FM mode	273	Dialing a number	279	Group commands	293
Setting the frequency (FM or AM tuner mode only)	273	Redialing	279	Tuner commands	293
Next/previous station (FM and AM tuner mode only)	274	Storing numbers in the phonebook	279	DISC and AUX commands	293
Next/previous channel (XM® tuner mode only)	274	Calling a phonebook entry	280	PHONE commands	294
Station search (FM and AM tuner mode only)	274	Operating examples	280	Navigation commands	294
				Various commands	295

INFO	297	Rear camera*	309
Opening the INFO main menu	298	General information and operation . . .	310
INFO main menu	298	General information	310
Vehicle functions	299	Operation	310
Climate	299		
Vehicle Height	299	Appendix	313
Suspension Info	299	Technical data	314
Car Settings	300	Headunit	314
Opening the Car Settings menu ..	300	Antenna type	314
Auto Door Lock	301	Radio	314
Auto Door Unlock	302	Display	314
All other functions	302	Common	314
System Settings	304		
Opening the			
System Settings menu	304		
Display Off	304		
Full Display Off	305		
Display Dimming	305		
Display Brightness	306		
Language	307		
All other functions	307		

This user manual has been designed to assist in using the Driver Information System. The manual includes the following chapters:

Functional Introduction

This chapter includes the following:

- ◆ Functional Description
- ◆ Menu System
- ◆ System Components and Controls
- ◆ FM Main Menu Example

FM and AM mode

Here you will find all information regarding FM, AM and HD Radio^{TM1} operation.

XM^{®2} Satellite Radio mode

This chapter describes the XM[®] Satellite Radio mode.

-
1. HD RadioTM Technology Manufactured Under License From iBiquity Digital Corporation. U.S. and Foreign Patents. HD RadioTM and the HD Radio logo are proprietary trademarks of iBiquity Digital Corporation.
 2. XM[®] and the XM[®] logos are registered trademarks of XM Satellite Radio Inc.

DISC mode

In this chapter you will find the descriptions of how to play the following discs:

- ◆ Audio CD
- ◆ MP3 CD
- ◆ Audio DVD
- ◆ Video DVD
- ◆ Video CD

AUX mode

This chapter describes how to connect and play back audio/video from the following external signal sources:

- ◆ iPod^{®3} mobile digital device (audio playback only)
- ◆ USB stick (audio playback only)
- ◆ AUX signal source (audio and/or video playback)

-
3. iPod[®] is a trademark of Apple Inc.

PHONE (*Bluetooth*[®] Hands-Free)

This chapter describes the phone functions that can be accessed if there is a mobile phone connected with the system.

Navigation

Here you will find, among other things, detailed information regarding the following topics:

- ◆ Destination input
- ◆ Functions following destination input
- ◆ Route guidance

Voice control

Here you will find the description of how to operate the system with voice control.

INFO

This chapter describes the following topics:

- ◆ Displaying various vehicles details
- ◆ Vehicle settings
- ◆ System settings

Introduction

Chapters in this manual

Rear camera*¹

Here you will find the description of the Rear camera*.

Appendix




In this chapter you will find the technical data of the system and a troubleshooting section.

Table of contents

The table of contents is intended to help you find information quickly.

1. The asterisk * identifies optional equipment


General symbols


Icon or text	Explanation
*	The asterisk * identifies optional equipment.
	The 'info' icon identifies tips and additional information.
	The filled triangle prompts you to perform an action.
	Two filled triangles represent the continuation symbol.
Page 23	This is how a reference to another page is shown.
◆ ◆ ◆ etc.	These bullet points are used to identify lists.

Icon or text	Explanation
① ② ③ etc.	Legends for illustrations are consecutively numbered.
Display	On-screen displays are shown in this font.
<i>Command</i>	Commands for the voice control system and voice output of the voice control system are shown in italics.

Safety instructions

In this user manual you will find various safety instructions intended to ensure your personal safety. You should carefully read and follow **all** safety instructions.

 WARNING
This warning identifies where the possible cause of serious damage to the product may be, and possible causes of traffic accident due to user's carelessness.

 CAUTION
This warning identifies a situation where operation may be misunderstood as an error or when care needs to be taken when handling or using the product..

Safety instructions



WARNING

Operating the Driver-Information-Systems while driving could cause accidents due to lack of attention to the road.

- ◆ Operate the system with the vehicle parked. Some functions of the system are disabled when vehicle is in motion. The system is fully functional only when the vehicle is parked.
- ◆ Minimize the time looking at the display.

Parking the vehicle in areas where stopping or parking is prohibited to operate the Driver-Information-Systems may be a cause of an accident.

To operate the system, do not park in areas where stopping or parking is prohibited.



WARNING

If you use the phone functions when driving, you may be distracted from the traffic situation, thus increasing the accident hazard.

Only use the phone functions when the vehicle is stationary.

If you use the navigation system, you may be distracted from the traffic situation and fail to observe traffic signs, traffic regulations and road safety facilities, thus increasing the accident hazard.

- ◆ Only enter a navigation destination when the vehicle is stationary.
- ◆ Always observe traffic signs, traffic regulations and road safety facilities. These always have priority over driving recommendations made by the system.



WARNING

It is impossible to provide an assurance that the speed values stored in the digital map will always match those of the current traffic regulations in every situation.

- ◆ Always observe the applicable legal speed limits and traffic regulations.
- ◆ The current legal road traffic speed limit always takes priority over the values stored in the digital map.
- ◆ The vehicle speedometer must always be given priority for display of the vehicle speed.

**WARNING**

Disassembling or altering the Driver Information System may be a cause for an accident, fire or electrical shock.

Do not disassemble or alter the system.

Water or other foreign objects entering the Driver Information System may be a cause for an accident, fire or electrical shocks.

Be careful of water or other foreign objects entering the system.

Using the Driver Information System in its damaged state, such as display or audio not working, may cause an accident, fire or electrical shock.

Do not use the system in its damaged state.

**WARNING**

It cannot be guaranteed that all available emergency services in your vicinity are stored in the digital map of the navigation system.

- ◆ Do not rely exclusively on the navigation system when attempting to locate an emergency service (hospital, fire service, etc.).
- ◆ Use your own discretion and abilities to secure help in such situations.

Touching the antenna during a thunderstorm could cause an electrical shock due to lightning striking the antenna.

Do not touch the antennae during a thunderstorm.

**WARNING**

The Driver Information System is a class 1 laser product. Opening the housing or a defective or damaged housing represents an injury hazard due to invisible laser radiation.

- ◆ Do not open the housing.
- ◆ For safety reasons, have any maintenance work performed by qualified service experts only.

**CAUTION**

Do not place beverages close to the Driver Information System. The system may be damaged if you spill them.

Do not strike or allow anything to impact the Driver Information System. Damage to the system could occur.

(continued)

Introduction

Operational safety

CAUTION

(continued)

Do not use the Driver Information System in its damaged state. It may cause a critical damage to the system.

Information about the laser used



This laser product is classified as a class 1 laser product in accordance with the national/international standards **DIN EN 60825-1 : 2003-10** and **DHHS Rules 21 CFR Subchapter J** to the date of manufacture.

The laser beam in this class 1 laser product is so weak that it poses no threat in any situation, or this product is designed that the laser beam is limited to the inside of the device. A laser encased in this device can, however, still be powerful enough to qualify as a higher class of laser. For this reason the protective case should not be opened at any time (loss of warranty).

Technical data for the laser equipment inside the device:

Output power from laser beam: 0.68 mW (DVD) / 0.85 mW (CD)

Wave length of laser beam: 665 nm (DVD) / 795 nm (CD)

The laser diode is not pulsed during operation.

Information about the operating temperature range

- ◆ Temperature range in which the Driver Information System provides full functionality: -4° F - +149° F (-20° C - +65° C).

- ◆ Temperature range in which the Driver Information System can be stored and then operate normally in the above-mentioned range: -40° F - +176° F (-40° C - +80° C)

i If the temperature is too low or too high, the Driver Information System may not work. This is not a product malfunction. So, don't be alarmed and use the system after a while.

Intended purpose

Please keep the following information in mind when using the Driver Information System:

- ◆ The safety instructions in this manual
- ◆ The road traffic regulations

Servicing

Tampering with electronic components or systems and their software may result in malfunctions. Even systems which have not been modified may be affected due to the connectivity of the electronics.

Malfunctioning of the electronics can seriously endanger the operational safety of your vehicle.

Always have all work or modifications to electronic components carried out by an approved service center with the necessary expertise and tools for any work required. Especially for safety-related operations and operations on safety-related systems, servicing by an approved service center is essential.

Function restrictions when driving the vehicle

Certain functions, such as Navigation menu selection or Car Settings may be restricted or unavailable while driving.

As soon as the vehicle falls below a certain speed, the functions are unrestricted or available again.

The restriction can be recognized, for example, from the fact that certain menu items have no function or that a corresponding message appears.

Videos such as video DVD or video CD are viewable only when the gear stick position is at „P“.

You will find further information in the corresponding chapters in this manual.

Federal Communications Commission (FCC) and Industry Canada (IC) compliance statement

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and
- (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Caution

Any changes or modifications not expressly approved by the manufacturer, responsible for compliance, could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Radiofrequency radiation exposure information

The radiated output power of the device is far below the FCC radio frequency exposure limits. Nevertheless, the device shall be used in such a manner that the potential for human contact during normal operation is minimized.

Bluetooth® information



Bluetooth® Qualified Design ID Number B014571

Operational safety

Maintenance

CAUTION

The Driver Information System contains high-quality electronic components which require special care with regard to maintenance.

The following should be observed:

- ◆ The display scratches easily. Clean the display using a dry, clean and soft cloth with the system off.
- ◆ Do not exert excessive pressure on the displays or other surfaces when cleaning it.
- ◆ Rough rub, chemical wipe or solvent (e.g. alcohol, benzene, thinner) may scratch or distort the display surface.

(continued)

CAUTION

(continued)

- ◆ The device must not be sprayed with cleaning agents or liquids. Ingress of liquids can result in the destruction of the equipment.
- ◆ If the system has any problem, please contact your Hyundai dealer or an approved service center to resolve the problem.

Warranty

CAUTION

Do not open the housing of any system component.

If you open the housing, the warranty is lost and after service will not be possible.

System features	18
System components	19
Menu system	24
Operating example for the FM main menu	27
Abbreviated list entries	30
Basic functions	31

Functional introduction

System features

Congratulation to your Driver Information System!

The Driver Information System is a high-end multimedia system supporting the following:

- ◆ FM, AM and HD Radio™¹ reception
- ◆ XM®² Satellite Radio reception
- ◆ DVD changer supporting up to six discs of the type audio CD, DVD audio, DVD video, VCD, MP3 files on CD or DVD, and WMA files on CD or DVD
- ◆ External connection supporting USB with MP3 or WMA files, iPod® mobile digital device and audio or video AUX connection via a mini jack.

Especially, the 8-inch display provides high quality images with great audio output from Lexicon sound system.

Advantages of the Driver Information System

Display

8-inch LCD provides three aspect ratio for all video sources for your taste.

Radio

An additional FM tuner allows all available stations to be available instantly without having to search through the entire frequency band.

The integrated HD Radio™ capable FM/AM tuner offers digital radio reception.

The integrated XM® Radio tuner offers digital satellite radio reception.

Antenna

Roof antenna (GPS and XM® Radio reception) and an integrated glass antenna (FM/AM reception) offers superb reception quality.

DVD Changer 6

6 discs in the changer at a time provides a convenient way of changing switching between discs without the hassle of searching, removing, and inserting a desired disc.

Inserted disc type is identified, and auto play of its content depending on its type makes it convenient for the user.

With the PBC (supported by MPEG1 version 2.0 VCD) provides a convenient way of navigating through the contents provided by the VCD.

Others

A central control panel that offers commonly used functions at the tip of your finger gives great control over the Driver Information System. The rotate-push-press controller at the center allows great ease of navigating through the Driver Information System menus.

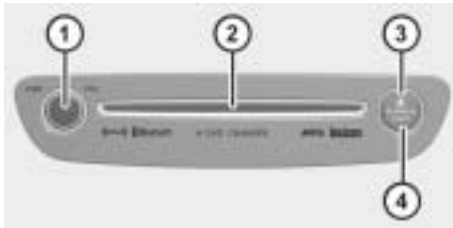
-
1. HD Radio™ Technology Manufactured Under License From iBiquity Digital Corporation. U.S. and Foreign Patents. HD Radio™ and the HD Radio logo are proprietary trademarks of iBiquity Digital Corporation.
 2. XM® and the XM® logos are registered trademarks of XM Satellite Radio Inc.

The Driver Information System consists of the following main components:

- ◆ Headunit, see page 19
- ◆ Display, see page 19
- ◆ Central control panel, see page 20
- ◆ Function buttons on the steering wheel, see page 22

Headunit

The headunit is located in the vehicle dashboard.



Control	Page
① Press ●: Switching audio/video playback on/off	32
Press ● and hold: Switching the display off	304
Turn ●: Setting the volume	33
② Disc slot	
③ ▲ Ejecting the disc changer magazine	82
④ LOAD Loading the disc changer magazine	79

Display

The display is located in the vehicle dashboard.



① Display

Functional introduction

System components


Central control panel

The central control panel is located in the front in the vehicle center console. It comprises the controller and the main function buttons.







- ① Main function buttons
- ② Controller






Controller

You can push, turn and press the controller , see the following descriptions.

Pushing the controller




- ◆ Push to the left or right  :
Switching between different menu areas, see page 29 in this chapter.
- ◆ Push forwards or backwards  :
 - ◆ Scrolling through a list page by page, see page 29 in this chapter.
 - ◆ Highlighting a menu item, see page 28 in this chapter.

- ◆ Push forwards or backwards  , push to the left or right  , push diagonally :
Moving the map, see chapter “Navigation”, section “Moving the map/ setting the map scale” on page 206.

Turning the controller



Turn to the left or right :
Highlighting a menu item, see page 28 in this chapter.

Pressing the controller



Press:
Confirming a highlighted menu item, see page 28 in this chapter.

Main function buttons



Main function button	Page
① FM/AM	
◆ Switching to FM or AM mode	42
◆ Switching mode/band	43
② BACK (short press)	
◆ Going back one menu level	26
◆ Switching between fullscreen video and menu screen:	
◆ Video DVD	96
◆ Video CD	109
◆ AUX video	144
BACK (long press)	
Opening the main menu for the active main function	26

Main function button	Page
③ MAP/GUIDE	
◆ Calling up the map display and switching to Navigation mode	204
◆ Switching the map from scroll mode to position mode while the map is displayed	204
◆ Calling up a current audible driving recommendation	208
④ NAVI/MENU	
Opening the Navigation main menu	209
⑤ INFO/PHONE	
◆ Opening the INFO main menu	298
◆ Opening the PHONE main menu	152

Functional introduction

System components

Main function button	Page
⑥ DISC/AUX	
◆ Switching to DISC mode and playing discs	84 95 108
◆ Switching to AUX mode	127
⑦ XM	
Switching to XM® Satellite Radio mode	57



Function buttons on the steering wheel



Function button	Page
① ▲ and ▼ (short press)	
◆ Tuning to a station via the presets (FM or AM)	47
◆ Skipping chapters forward/back (video DVD)	98
◆ Skipping tracks forward/back: Audio disc	88
Video CD	111
iPod® ¹ mobile digital device	132
USB	138
▲ and ▼ (long press)	
◆ Tuning to a station via a station search (FM or AM)	45
◆ Tuning to a channel using the channel list (XM® Satellite Radio)	61

¹ iPod® is a trademark of Apple Inc.

Function button	Page
① ▲ and ▼ (long press)	
◆ Selecting and playing discs	87 97 110
◆ Fast forwarding/reversing: USB memory stick iPod® ¹ mobile digital device	138 133
② VOL ▲ and ▼	
Setting the volume	33
③ MODE (short press)	
Calling up main functions	25
MODE (long press)	
Switching audio/video playback on/off	32
④ ⏻	
Activating/deactivating the voice control system	269

Function button	Page
⑤  (short press)	
◆ Opening the PHONE main menu	152
◆ Switching private mode on/off	182
◆ Accepting an incoming call	175
◆ Accepting a call-waiting call and holding the first call	186
◆ Swapping between two calls	186
 (long press)	
◆ Cancel outgoing call	174
◆ Using redial	174
◆ Rejecting an incoming call	175
◆ Ending a call	184
◆ Ending the active call	187

Functional introduction

Menu system

WARNING

Operating the Driver Information System while driving could cause accidents due to lack of attention to the road.

- ◆ Operate the system with the vehicle parked. Some functions of the system are disabled when vehicle is in motion. The system is fully functional only when the vehicle is parked.
- ◆ Minimize the time looking at the display.

The Driver Information System is easy to use thanks to its menu system.

There is a main menu for each of the following main functions:

- ◆ FM (FM band)
- ◆ AM (AM band)
- ◆ XM[®] (Satellite Radio)
- ◆ DISC (audio CD, MP3 CD, audio/video DVD and video CD)

- ◆ AUX (iPod[®] mobile digital device, USB memory stick and AUX signal source)
- ◆ PHONE (**Bluetooth**[®] handsfree)
- ◆ INFO (vehicle and system settings as well as various vehicle status displays)
- ◆ Navigation

Composition of the main menu

The main menu for a main function comprises at most the following three user-control areas:

- ◆ Main menu
- ◆ Content area
- ◆ Options menu

It also contains the following two non-user-control areas:

- ◆ Top status line
- ◆ Bottom status line

The illustration below shows the main menu for the FM main function.



- ① Main menu
- ② Top status line
- ③ Content area
- ④ Highlighted menu item in the Options menu
- ⑤ Options menu
- ⑥ Bottom status line

Top and bottom status lines

The top and bottom status lines ② and ⑥ contain no user controls. The status lines are provided for information purposes only and can show you, for example, the following:

- ◆ information on the currently active main function, see section “Top status line” on page 27,
- ◆ information on the currently active entertainment source (e.g. FM), see section “Top status line” on page 27,
- ◆ Bluetooth connection status of the phone, see chapter “PHONE”, section “Connecting a mobile phone” on page 156.

Main menu

The main menu ① shows the subfunctions available for the active main function as individual menu items.

- i** See page 28 for a description of how to highlight a menu item and confirm the selection.

Content area

The content area ③ shows either the content of the menu item selected in the main menu ① or a further submenu where you can again select a menu item.

- i** See page 28 for a description of how to select a menu item and confirm the selection.










Options menu

For certain displays in the content area ③ you can open the Options menu ④. It contains additional information or setting options.

Calling up main functions

Option 1

- i** Pressing one of the following main function buttons activates the corresponding mode, provided it was not previously active. If it was already active, then it remains active.

- ▶ **FM mode:** Press the main function button , see page 42.
 - ▶ **AM mode:** Press the main function button , see page 42.
 - ▶ **XM® Satellite Radio mode:** Press the main function button , see page 57.
 - ▶ **DISC mode:** Press the main function button , see page 84, 95 or 108.
 - ▶ **AUX mode:** Press the main function button , see page 127.
 - ▶ **PHONE mode:** Press the main function button , see page 152.
 - ▶ **INFO mode:** Press the main function button , see page 298.
 - ▶ **Navigation mode:** Press the main function button , see page 204.
- or
- ▶ Press the main function button , see page 209.

Menu system

Option 2

▶ Press the **MODE** button on the steering wheel repeatedly until the desired main function is called up.

i You cannot switch to the main functions PHONE, INFO and Navigation on the steering wheel.

i If Navigation, INFO or PHONE is the active main function, switching to FM/AM, XM® Satellite Radio, DISC or AUX main function on the steering wheel does not switch the display, only the audio source will be switched accordingly.

If you want to switch the display also, you must use the corresponding main function button on the control panel.

BACK function

i There are certain menus or displays that you can only exit or close by briefly pressing the **BACK** button.

Depending on the current system state, the **BACK** button has several functions.

Briefly pressing the **BACK** button:

- ◆ Going back one menu level
- ◆ Closing the DISC main menu and returning to video full-screen display:
 - ◆ Video DVD
 - ◆ Video CD
- ◆ Opening the main menu from the video full-screen display or closing the main menu and returning to video full-screen display (AUX playback)

Pressing and holding the **BACK** button:

- ◆ Opening the main menu for the active main function
- ◆ Opening the DISC main menu from the video full-screen display:
 - ◆ Video DVD
 - ◆ Video CD

Operating example for the FM main menu

Switching to FM mode

- ▶ **Option 1:** Press the **FM/AM** button.

The system will switch to either FM or AM mode.

If the AM main menu appears:

- ▶ Press the **FM/AM** button again.

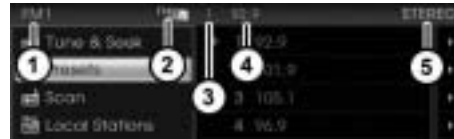
The FM main menu appears.

- ▶ **Option 2:** Press the **MODE** button on the steering wheel repeatedly until the system switches to FM mode.

i If Navigation, INFO or PHONE is the active mode, switching to FM mode on the steering wheel does not switch the display, only the audio source will be switched accordingly. If you want to switch the display also, you must use the **FM/AM** button on the control panel.

Top status line

The top status line shows various information.



- ① Currently active main function
- ② Currently active entertainment source
- ③ Preset of the currently tuned station in the presets
- ④ Currently played frequency (in case of DISC mode currently played track or chapter)
- ⑤ Audio play mode/Stereo availability

Bottom status line

The bottom status line shows the controller icons among other things.



- ① Controller icons

The icons ◀, ▶, ▲ and ▼ represent the directions of movement of the controller Ⓞ.

The icon ○ represents turning the controller Ⓞ.

Each individual icon can be shown in white or gray.

White icon:

Pushing or turning as appropriate initiates an operation.

Gray icon:

Pushing or turning as appropriate does not initiate an operation.

Functional introduction



Operating example for the FM main menu

Main menu, content area and Options menu




- ① Main menu with the various menu items (blue frame around the menu= menu is active)
- ② Selected menu item
- ③ Blue frame
- ④ Content area (no blue frame around the content area= content area is inactive)

Highlighting a menu item

- ▶ Turn  the controller  until the desired menu item is highlighted.

i If you highlight a menu item in the main menu ①, then the display in the content area ③ can automatically show further information or menus for the selected menu item. In the previous illustration, the menu item Presets is selected and the content area ③ then shows the presets in the form of a list.

Confirming a highlighted menu item

- ▶ Press the controller .

The content area is now active and supplied with a blue frame.

i In the following descriptions, highlighting of a menu item and confirmation of the highlighted menu item is combined into one prompt for action and referred to as “selecting”.

The illustration below shows, in the content area ②, the presets in the form of a list. You can select and confirm a menu item in the list as previously described, which, in this example, will result in the system tuning to the appropriate station.



- ① Main menu
- ② Content area
- ③ Selected menu item in the content area
- ④ Icon ▶ indicating the Options menu is available
- ⑤ Icon ♦ for the currently played station

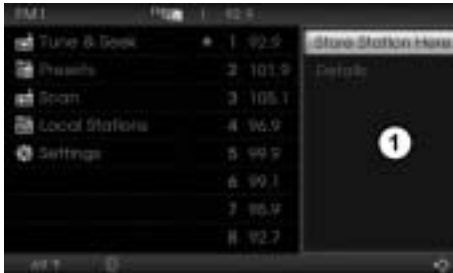
i The Options menu is only available if the icon ▶ appears to the right of a menu item. In the illustration above, the Options menu is available for all menu items.

Operating example for the FM main menu

Opening the Options menu

- ▶ With the content area active, push \rightarrow the controller \odot once.

The Options menu for the selected menu item appears. In the Options menu you can select and confirm further menu items.



- ① Options menu

Closing the Options menu

- ▶ **Option 1:** Push \leftarrow the controller \odot once.
- ▶ **Option 2:** Briefly press the **BACK** button.

The Options menu is now closed and the content area becomes active again.

Switching between different menu areas

- ▶ Push \leftarrow \rightarrow the controller \odot repeatedly until the desired area is active.

i You can tell an active area by the blue frame around the area.

Lists

The menus in all three user-control areas in a main menu (main menu, content area and Options menu) can be displayed in the form of lists.

In addition to selecting and confirming as previously described, when using lists the following options are also available:

- ◆ Scrolling through a list page by page, see page 29
- ◆ Displaying an abbreviated list entry in full, see page 30

Scrolling through a list page by page



- ① List
- ② Scrolling behavior cursor

If a list contains more than one page, the scrolling behavior cursor ② will be displayed.

- ▶ **To scroll down:** Push \downarrow the controller \odot repeatedly until the desired page is displayed.
- ▶ **To scroll up:** Push \uparrow the controller \odot repeatedly until the desired page is displayed.

i When you scroll through the list page by page or select an entry, the scrolling behavior cursor ② moves accordingly. By doing so it indicates your current position in the list.

Functional introduction

Abbreviated list entries

- i** List entries must be abbreviated for display in the content area. Abbreviated entries are indicated by the three dots at the end of the entry.

Displaying an abbreviated list entry in full



① Abbreviated entry

- ▶ **To call up the Options menu:** Push → the controller (⊙) repeatedly until the Options menu is displayed.



① Options menu

- ▶ **To call up the complete text:** Turn ↻ the controller (⊙) until the menu item Details is highlighted.
- ▶ Press the controller (⊙).
The complete text is displayed.



① Complete text

- ▶ **To close the complete text:** Press the controller (⊙) again.

Switching the system on

WARNING

Hearing damage due to high volume level!

When switching the Driver Information System on, a sudden burst of high volume may be a cause of hearing damage.


When the system switches on, be careful of the volume level. Set the volume to an acceptable level before switching the system off.

i After switching the system on, the boot process starts. During the boot process you cannot operate the system. It takes some time until all system functions are ready, especially for the voice control system.


Vehicles without Start button

- ▶ Insert the ignition key into the ignition and turn to the **ACC** or **IGN** position.
The system will switch on and a safety instruction will be displayed after a short time.



- ▶ **To confirm the safety instruction:**
Press the controller .

Vehicles with Start button

- ▶ Press the vehicle's Start button once.
If you have not applied the brakes, **ACC** and the system is switched on.
If you have applied the brakes, **IGN** and the system is switched on and the vehicle engine starts.
In both cases, the safety instruction mentioned above will be displayed.
- ▶ **To confirm the safety instruction:**
Press the controller .

Battery warning message

Please use the system with the vehicle's engine running.



The message disappears automatically when you start the vehicle's engine.

i Prolonged usage of the system with the engine not running may cause complete discharge of the battery.

Switching the system off

Vehicles without Start button

- ▶ Turn the ignition key to the **OFF** position.
The system will switch off.

Functional introduction

Basic functions

Vehicles with Start button

- ▶ Press the vehicle's Start button once.
The system will switch off.

Switching off during a phone call

If you switch the system off during a phone call using the hands-free unit of the system, the call will be transferred automatically back to the mobile phone (private mode).


Switching audio/video playback on/off

i When the system is switched on, you can switch audio/video playback off and on independently. Whether audio/video playback is switched on or off, you can switch the system on and off without affecting it.

The following functions are still available when audio/video playback is switched off:

- ◆ Voice control system
- ◆ PHONE (**Bluetooth**[®] handsfree)
- ◆ Navigation
- ◆ INFO

Switching off

- ▶ **Option 1:** Press the rotary knob  on the headunit.
- ▶ **Option 2:** Press and hold the **MODE** button on the steering wheel.


In both cases, audio/video playback switches off and the message AV OFF is shown in the top status line.

Additionally, the system switches to the navigation map display, if one of the following modes was selected and shown in the display before playback was switched off:




- ◆ FM mode
- ◆ AM mode
- ◆ XM[®] Satellite Radio mode
- ◆ DISC mode
- ◆ AUX mode

For all other modes, the display remains unchanged.

Switching on

- ▶ **Option 1:** Press the rotary knob  on the headunit.
- ▶ **Option 2:** Briefly press the **MODE** button on the steering wheel.

In both cases, the audio/video that was playing before playback was switched off is resumed.

- ▶ **Option 3:** Press one of the main function buttons ,  or  on the central control panel.

The system will switch to the mode corresponding to the button pressed.

- ▶ **Option 4:** Loading a magazine compartment, see page 79, page 80 and page 81.

The system will switch to DISC mode.

- ▶ **Option 5:** Connecting an iPod[®] mobile digital device or USB memory stick, see page 123.

In both cases, the system will switch to the corresponding mode.

Setting the volume



WARNING

Driving with the volume set to such a level that the outside sound is not audible, may be a cause of an accident.

Set the volume to such a level, that the outside sound is audible.

There is one common volume setting for the FM, AM, DISC and XM[®] Satellite Radio signal sources.


There is also one common volume setting for the AUX signal sources (iPod[®], USB and AUX). Both settings are independent from each other.

Separate volume settings are possible for the phone, for audible driving recommendations and for voice control. The respective volume can be set during a phone call, during an audible driving recommendation and during voice output.



i The volume for audible driving recommendations can also be set in the navigation settings, see the chapter “Navigation”, section “Guidance volume settings” on page 207.

The system automatically saves the respective setting upon setting.



On the headunit

▶ Turn the rotary knob .

On the steering wheel

▶ **Option 1:** Briefly press the  or  button one or more times.


The volume will change in small increments.


▶ **Option 2:** Press and hold the  or  button.

The volume will change in large increments.

Switching to FM1/FM2 or AM mode and switching radio band

i If Navigation, INFO or PHONE is the active mode, switching to FM or AM mode on the steering wheel does not switch the display, only the audio source will be switched accordingly.

If you want to switch the display also, you must use the  button on the control panel.


▶ **Option 1:** Press the  button.

If any other mode than FM or AM was active before, the system will switch to FM or AM mode.

If FM1 was active before, the system will switch to FM2.

If FM2 was active before, the system will switch to AM band.

If AM was active before, the system will switch to FM1.

▶ **Option 2:** Press the  button on the steering wheel repeatedly until the system switches to FM or AM mode.

Audio settings

The audio settings include the following functions:

- ◆ Setting the balance/fader, see page 34
- ◆ Setting the treble/mid/bass, see page 35
- ◆ Switching surround on/off, see page 36
- ◆ Performing an audio reset, see page 36

Functional introduction

Basic functions

Opening the Audio Settings menu

i The Audio Settings menu is opened in different ways, depending on the currently active signal source.

Active signal source is FM, AM, XM[®] Satellite Radio, audio CD/DVD, MP3 CD or AUX (audio)



The illustration shows the FM main menu with the main menu activated

- ① Main menu
- ② Audio Settings menu
- ③ Content area
- ④ Settings menu item

- ▶ In the main menu ①, select the menu item Settings ④.

The Audio Settings menu ② is displayed in the content area ③.

Active signal source is Video CD, video DVD or AUX (video)

- ▶ Press and hold the **BACK** button until the appropriate main menu is displayed.



The illustration shows the video DVD main menu with the main menu activated

- ① Main menu
- ② Audio/video selection menu
- ③ Content area
- ④ Settings menu item

- ▶ In the main menu ①, select the menu item Settings ④.

The audio/video selection menu ② is displayed in the content area ③.

- ▶ In the audio/video selection menu, select the menu item Audio.

The Audio Settings menu is displayed in the content area ③.

Closing the Audio Settings menu

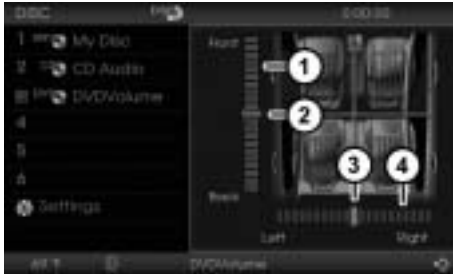
- ▶ Briefly press the **BACK** button.

Setting the balance/fader

i The balance/fader setting applies to all signal sources.

- ▶ **To open the Balance/Fader menu:** In the Audio Settings menu, select the menu item Balance/Fader.

The Balance/Fader menu is displayed in the content area.



- ① Scale for the fader setting
- ② Fader indicator
- ③ Balance indicator
- ④ Scale for the balance setting

The position of the two indicators ② and ③ on the scale show the current settings. The color of the two indicators shows whether the balance function or the fader function is active. In the illustration above, the fader function is active.

- ▶ **Activating the balance or fader function:** If necessary, press the controller

The previously inactive function is now active.

- ▶ **To set balance or fader:** Turn the controller until the desired setting is reached.

The system saves the setting automatically.

- ▶ **To close the Balance/Fader menu:** Push the controller once or briefly press the **BACK** button.

Setting the treble/mid/bass

- i** The system automatically saves the treble/mid/bass settings separately for all audio and video signal sources.

- ▶ **To open the Treble/Mid/Bass menu:** In the Audio Settings menu, select the menu item Treble/Mid/Bass.

The Treble/Mid/Bass menu is displayed in the content area.



- ① Scale for the treble setting
- ② Scale for the mid setting
- ③ Scale for the bass setting
- ④ Treble indicator
- ⑤ Mid indicator
- ⑥ Bass indicator

The position of the three indicators ④, ⑤ and ⑥ on the scales ①, ② and ③ show the respective current settings. The color of the indicators shows which of the scales is active. In the illustration above, the scale for the treble setting is active.

- i** You can tell an active scale by the white frame around the scale.

Functional introduction

Basic functions

▶ **Activating a scale:** Push **↑** **↓** or press the controller **⊙** repeatedly until the desired scale is active.

▶ **To set a value:** Turn **↻** the controller **⊙** until the desired setting is reached.

The indicator moves accordingly on the scale, showing you the setting.

▶ **To close the Treble/Mid/Bass menu:** Push **←** the controller **⊙** once or briefly press the **BACK** button.

Switching surround on/off

There is a common surround setting for the following signal sources:

- ◆ FM
- ◆ AM
- ◆ XM® Satellite Radio
- ◆ iPod® mobile digital device, USB memory stick and AUX signal source
- ◆ Audio CD without DTS sound
- ◆ Video CD

There is also a common surround setting for the following signal sources:

- ◆ Audio DVD
- ◆ Video DVD
- ◆ Audio CD with DTS sound

i The two settings are independent of each other. The system saves the settings automatically.

▶ **To switch the surround function on/off:** In the Audio Settings menu, select the menu item Surround.



- ① Status display
- ② Menu item Surround

Depending on the previous status, the function will be switched on or off. The status display will change accordingly.

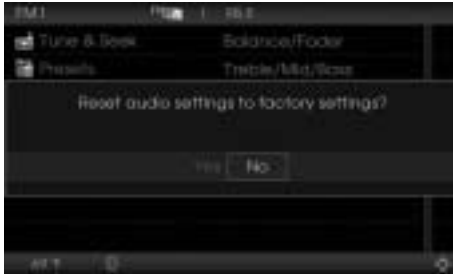
- ◆ Display = function switched on
- ◆ Display = function switched off

Performing an audio reset

You can use the audio reset function to reset the following features to the factory settings:

- ◆ Balance/Fader
- ◆ Treble/Mid/Bass
- ◆ Surround
- ▶ In the Audio Settings menu, select the menu item Reset Audio Settings.

You will be prompted to confirm that you wish to reset the audio settings.



- ▶ Select Yes or No.

The system will or will not reset the audio settings, depending on the answer you select.

Video settings

Please see chapter “DISC mode”, section “Video DVD playback”, subsection “Video settings” on page 98 for a description of the video settings.

HD Radio (TM) information	40
General operation	42
Tuning to stations	44
Storing stations	49
Showing station details	51
Audio and FM/AM HD Radio (TM) settings	52

HD Radio (TM) information

Licensing information



HD Radio™ Technology Manufactured Under License From iBiquity Digital Corporation. U.S. and Foreign Patents. HD Radio™ and the HD Radio logo are proprietary trademarks of iBiquity Digital Corporation.

Availability information

HD Radio™ reception is available in the United States, including Alaska and Hawaii.

What is HD Radio™ technology?

The Driver Information System is able to receive standard analog FM/AM radio broadcasting as well as digital HD Radio™ FM/AM broadcasting.

HD Radio™ technology provides digital and analog reception using existing FM and AM broadcasting frequencies.

Currently, radio stations broadcasting an HD Radio™ signal are operating in a hybrid mode of both, analog and digital, in order to reach both receivers. In both modes, analog and digital, the broadcasted program content is the same (except multicasting, see below).

Eventually, as analog receivers are replaced by digital ones, radio stations may be able to turn off their analog broadcasting and use only the digital one.

Multicasting

HD Radio™ FM stations are able to broadcast multiple digital program streams (channels) over a single FM frequency. For example, a HD Radio™ FM station can run a main channel of music and a sub channel of news (or even two different music channels) at one frequency.

But only the program content of the main channel is also broadcasted analog.

HD Radio™ signal delay

To overcome the delay that digital systems inherently produce, HD Radio™ technology first uses the audio signal of the analog broadcasting when you tune to an AM station or to the main channel of a FM station. After that, the system will blend from analog to digital signal.

Normally, this blending is very smooth. If you experience a skip in program content of several seconds, the radio station has not implemented HD Radio™ broadcasting correctly. This is not a problem with your Driver Information System.

Due to the fact that sub channels are only broadcasted digital, blending from analog to digital signal is not possible if you tune to a sub channel. In this case playback of the sub channel starts after several seconds, this is a normal function.

Automatic switching between digital and analog broadcasting

If the reception of the digital signal is lost, the system switches automatically to the analog signal. As soon as the digital signal is available again it will switch back.

Due to the fact that sub channels are only broadcasted digital, first the system mutes playback if you have tuned to a sub channel and the digital signal is lost. Additionally, the upper status line shows the message No HD signal in place of station name. Second, after 1 minute with the digital signal lost, the system will automatically tune to the analog signal of the corresponding frequency.

Text based information

HD Radio™ stations are able to broadcast text based informations, e.g. station name, song title and artist name. The Driver Information System is able to display these informations.

FM and AM mode

General operation

i For information on general system operation, please refer to the chapter “Functional introduction” from page 17.

Switching to FM or AM mode

- ▶ **Option 1:** Press the **FM/AM** button.
- ▶ **Option 2:** Press the **MODE** button on the steering wheel repeatedly until the system switches to FM or AM mode.

i If Navigation, INFO or PHONE is the active mode, switching to FM or AM mode on the steering wheel does not switch the display, only the audio source will be switched accordingly.

If you want to switch the display also, you must use the **FM/AM** button on the control panel.

FM main menu and upper status line while receiving an analog FM signal



- ① Currently active FM mode (FM1 or FM2)
- ② Highlighted menu item in the main menu
- ③ Currently active entertainment source
- ④ Preset of the currently tuned station in the presets
- ⑤ If transmitted, name of the currently tuned station else frequency (depends also on the RDS setting, see section “RDS on” on page 53)
- ⑥ Indicator for stereo reception
- ⑦ If transmitted, program type (PTY code) of the currently tuned station, else no display (depends also on the RDS setting, see section “RDS on” on page 53)
- ⑧ Main menu

FM main menu and upper/lower status line while receiving a digital FM HD Radio™ signal



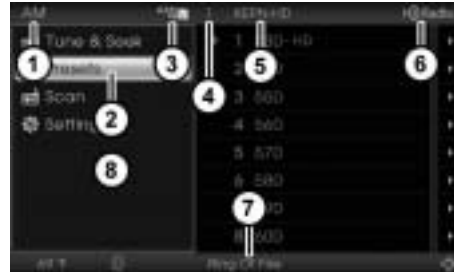
- ① Currently active FM mode (FM1 or FM2)
- ② Highlighted menu item in the main menu
- ③ Currently active entertainment source
- ④ Preset of the currently tuned station in the presets
- ⑤ If transmitted name of the currently tuned station, else frequency
- ⑥ Indicator for HD Radio™ reception
- ⑦ If transmitted song title currently playing, else no display
- ⑧ Main menu

AM main menu and upper status line while receiving an analog AM signal



- ① Currently active mode
- ② Highlighted menu item in the main menu
- ③ Currently active entertainment source
- ④ Preset of the currently tuned station in the presets
- ⑤ Frequency of the currently tuned station
- ⑥ Main menu

AM main menu and upper/lower status line while receiving a digital AM HD Radio™ signal



- ① Currently active mode
- ② Highlighted menu item in the main menu
- ③ Currently active entertainment source
- ④ Preset of the currently tuned station in the presets
- ⑤ If transmitted name of the currently tuned station, else frequency
- ⑥ Indicator for HD Radio™ reception
- ⑦ If transmitted song title currently playing, else no display
- ⑧ Main menu

Switching mode/band

- i** There are 16 presets available for the AM band and 32 presets for the FM band. The 32 FM presets are distributed among 2 FM modes (FM1 and FM2). You can use the FM modes to tune to separate set of stations for different regions.

Using the central control panel

- ▶ Press the **FM/AM** button.

If FM1 is the currently active mode, the system will switch to FM2.

If FM2 is the currently active mode, the system will switch to AM band.

If AM is the currently active band, the system will switch to FM1.

Using the steering wheel

- ▶ Press the **MODE** button repeatedly until the band is switched.

- i** With the **MODE** button, you cannot switch between FM1 and FM2.

Tuning to stations

i For information on general system operation, please refer to the chapter “Functional introduction” from page 17.

Overview

The following options are available:

- ◆ Tuning to a station via the station list, see page 44
- ◆ Tuning to a station via a station search, see page 45
- ◆ Tuning to a station via manual tuning, see page 46
- ◆ Tuning to a station via the presets, see page 47
- ◆ Tuning to a station via the Scan function, see page 47

Tuning to a station via the station list

i This function is only available in the FM band. The station list contains all the currently receivable FM stations. It is sorted by frequency number and is automatically refreshed and updated by the system.

- ▶ **To request the station list:** Open the FM or AM main menu, see section “Switching to FM or AM mode” on page 42.
- ▶ In the FM or AM main menu, select the menu item **Local Stations**.
The station list appears.



① Icon ◆ for the currently tuned station

- ▶ **To tune to a station:** Select the desired station in the station list.

The system tunes to the corresponding station.

If the selected station is a multicasting HD Radio™ FM station, the system tunes to the main channel of the corresponding station. The station list will show the main and the sub channel.



① HD1 = main channel



② HD2 = sub channel

- ▶ **To tune to a sub or a main channel:** Select the corresponding channel in the station list.

The system tunes to the corresponding channel.

Tuning to a station via a station search

Using the steering wheel

- ▶ Press and hold the  or  button.
- ▶ The search proceeds upwards or downwards. After releasing the button, it stops at the next receivable station.

Using the central control panel

Opening the Tune & Seek menu

- ▶ Open the FM or AM main menu, see section “Switching to FM or AM mode” on page 42.
- ▶ In the FM or AM main menu, select the menu item Tune & Seek.
The Tune & Seek menu appears.

Tune & Seek menu



- ① Frequency indicator (shows the currently tuned frequency)
- ② HD Radio™ indicator.

The HD Radio™ indicator ② shows one of the following:




- ◆ HD followed by a number between 1 - 8 (in case HD on is set in the settings and the tuned station is a multicasting HD Radio™ station). Number 1 is the main channel, numbers 2 - 8 are the sub channels.
- ◆ HD - - (in case HD on is set in the settings and the tuned station is a non-multicasting HD Radio™ station or it is not a HD Radio™ station)
- ◆ No display in case HD on is not set in the settings


i If HD on is not set in the settings (see section “HD on” on page 52), you have only access to analog radio stations.

Tuning to a station

- ▶ **Option 1:** Briefly push   the controller .

The seek proceeds upwards or downwards and stops at the next receivable station.

- ▶ **Option 2:** Push  or push  and hold the controller .

The frequency decreases or increases. After releasing the controller , the seek stops at the next receivable station.

Tuning to a sub channel


Tuning to a HD Radio™ sub channel is only possible if HD on is set in the settings and the tuned station is a multicasting HD Radio™ station.


You can tell this by the HD Radio™ indicator ②.

i For further information about the HD Radio™ indicator, please see section “Tune & Seek menu” on page 45.

FM and AM mode



Tuning to stations

- ▶ **To tune to another channel:** Press the controller .


The HD Radio™ indicator  is highlighted.



- ① Frequency indicator (not highlighted)
- ② HD Radio™ indicator (highlighted)

- ▶ Turn  the controller .

The system tunes to the next or the previous channel, depending on the direction of rotation.

- ▶ **To highlight the frequency indicator again:** Press the controller .



- ① Frequency indicator (highlighted)
- ② HD Radio™ indicator (not highlighted)

Now you can operate the search or the manual tuning again. For manual tuning, please see the following description.

Tuning to a station via manual tuning

Opening the Tune & Seek menu

- ▶ Open the FM or AM main menu, see section “Switching to FM or AM mode” on page 42.
- ▶ In the FM or AM main menu, select the menu item Tune & Seek.



The Tune & Seek menu appears.

- i** For further information about the Tune & Seek menu, please see page 45.



- ① Tune & Seek menu
- ② Currently tuned frequency

Tuning to a station

- ▶ Turn  the controller .

The frequency increases or decreases, depending on the direction of rotation.

Tuning to a sub channel

- ▶ Please see the section “Tuning to a sub channel” on page 45.

Tuning to a station via the presets

i There are 16 presets available for the AM band and 32 presets for the FM band. The 32 FM presets are distributed among 2 FM modes (FM1 and FM2).

You can use the FM modes to tune to separate set of stations for different regions.

i For information on switching the mode, please refer to the section “Switching mode/ band” on page 43.

i If you tune via the presets to a no longer receivable sub channel of a FM HD Radio™ station, the system mutes playback and shows the message *Acquiring HD Signal* in the upper statusline in place of station name.

After a certain time without receiving the sub channel, the upper statusline shows the message *No HD signal*. After a certain time, the system will tune to the analog signal of the corresponding frequency.

Using the central control panel

► **To call up a preset:** Open the FM or AM main menu, see section “Switching to FM or AM mode” on page 42.

► In the FM or AM main menu, select the menu item Presets.

In case of AM, the presets appear in the form of a list.

In case of FM, the presets of the currently active FM mode appears in the form of a list.



The illustration shows the FM presets

- ① Currently active FM mode (FM1 or FM2)
- ② Preset number of the currently tuned station
- ③ HD Radio™ channel display (HD1 = main channel, HD2 - 8 = sub channels)
- ④ Icon ♦ for the currently tuned station

i The display ③ only appears if the stored station is a HD Radio™ station and HD on is activated in the settings, see section “Audio and FM/AM HD Radio (TM) settings” on page 52.

If HD on is not activated, the channel display ③ disappears and access to the digital signal of stored HD Radio™ stations is not possible. In this case, you will have access to the analog signal only.

► **To tune to a station:** Select the desired station in the list.

Using the steering wheel

► Briefly press the or button.

The system will tune to the previous or next station stored in the presets.

Tuning to a station via the Scan function

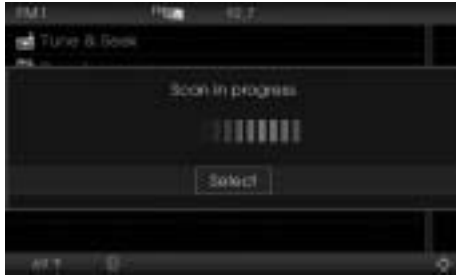
i The Scan function searches through the selected band, stops at a receivable station, plays the station for five seconds and goes to the next receivable station. It will not search for FM HD Radio™ sub channels.

Tuning to stations

Starting the Scan function

- ▶ In the FM or AM main menu, select the menu item Scan.

The Scan function starts, a corresponding Scan message is displayed.




- i** The Scan function will stop automatically, if the frequency from where it has been started is reached again.



It will also stop automatically, if you switch to another audio/video source. After switching back to AM/FM again, the system tunes to the frequency from where the Scan function has been started.

You can also stop the Scan function manually.


Stopping the Scan function manually


- ▶ **Option 1:** Press the controller .



The system will stop the Scan function.

- ▶ **Option 2:** Briefly press the  or  button on the steering wheel.


The system will stop the Scan function.


Button  was pressed: The system will tune to the station stored in the preset 16.

Button  was pressed: The system will tune to the station stored in the preset 1.

- ▶ **Option 3:** Press and hold the  or  button on the steering wheel until the Scan message disappears.

The system will stop the Scan function and activate the search function.

Button  was pressed: The seek proceeds downwards and stops at the next receivable station.

Button  was pressed: The seek proceeds upwards and stops at the next receivable station.

- i** For information on general system operation, please refer to the chapter “Functional introduction” from page 17.
- i** There are 16 presets available for the AM band and 32 presets for the FM band. The 32 FM presets are distributed among 2 FM modes (FM1 and FM2).
You can use the FM modes to tune to separate set of stations for different regions.
- i** For information on switching the mode, please refer to the section “Switching mode/ band” on page 43.

Storing stations using the station presets

- ▶ **To tune to the desired station:** See section “Tuning to stations” on page 44.
- ▶ **To request the station presets:** Open the FM or AM main menu, see section “Switching to FM or AM mode” on page 42.

- ▶ In the FM or AM main menu, select the menu item Presets.
In case of AM, the presets appear in the form of a list.
In case of FM, the presets of the currently active FM mode appears in the form of a list.



The illustration shows the FM presets

- ① Currently active FM mode (FM1 or FM2)
- ② Frequency or name of the currently tuned station (depends on the setting, see section “RDS on” on page 53)
- ③ Preset number 6

- ▶ **To select a preset (e.g. preset number 6):** Turn $\leftarrow \rightarrow$ the controller \odot until the preset number 6 is highlighted.
- ▶ **Option 1 to store the currently tuned station in the preset number 6:** Press and hold the controller \odot until the station is stored.
- ▶ **Option 2 to store the currently tuned station in the preset number 6:** Push \rightarrow the controller \odot once.

The Options menu appears.



- ① Menu item Store Station Here
- ② Options menu

FM and AM mode

Storing stations



- ▶ In the Options menu, select the menu item Store Station Here.
The station is stored.

Storing stations using the Tune & Seek menu

- ▶ **To request the Tune & Seek menu:**
Open the FM or AM main menu, see section “Switching to FM or AM mode” on page 42.
- ▶ In the FM or AM main menu, select the menu item Tune & Seek.
The Tune & Seek menu appears.



- ① Tune & Seek menu
- ② Currently tuned frequency

- ▶ **To tune to the desired station:** See section “Tuning to a station via a station search” on page 45 or section “Tuning to a station via manual tuning” on page 46.
- ▶ **To request the station preset list:**
Press and hold the controller  until the station preset list appears.
- ▶ **To store the station:** In the station preset list, highlight the desired preset and press the controller .
The station is stored.

Showing station details

Showing details of the currently tuned HD Radio™ station

i The system is able to show the following details of the currently tuned HD Radio™ station:

- ◆ Name and the frequency of the currently tuned HD Radio™ station,
- ◆ the title name and the artist name of the title currently playing.

► **To open the Options menu:** In the station list or in the presets, highlight the currently tuned station.



- ① Icon ◆ for the currently tuned station
- ② Highlighted preset

► Push ➡ the controller Ⓞ.
The Options menu appears.



- ① Menu item Details
- ② Options menu

► **To open the details screen:** In the Options menu, select the menu item Details.

You will see the details screen.

i The menu item Details cannot be selected if the highlighted station is not the currently tuned station or if it is not a HD Radio™ station.



- ① Song title name
- ② Artist name
- ③ Frequency
- ④ Station name

► **To close the details screen:** Press the controller Ⓞ.

Audio and FM/AM HD Radio (TM) settings

Audio settings

Please see the section “Audio settings” on page 33 for a description of the audio settings.

FM HD Radio™ settings

The FM HD Radio™ settings include the following functions:

- ◆ HD on, see page 52
- ◆ RDS on, see page 53

Opening and closing the FM HD Radio™ settings menu

- ▶ **To open the Settings menu:** Open the FM main menu, see section “Switching to FM or AM mode” on page 42.
- ▶ In the FM main menu, select the menu item Settings.

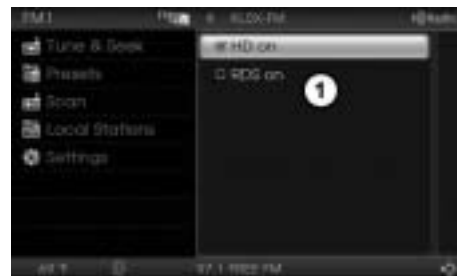
The Settings menu appears.



- ① FM main menu
- ② Settings menu
- ③ Menu item HD Radio
- ④ Menu item Settings

- ▶ **To open the FM HD Radio™ settings menu:** In the Settings menu, select the menu item HD Radio.

The FM HD Radio™ settings menu appears.



- ① FM HD Radio™ settings menu

- ▶ **To close the FM HD Radio™ settings menu:** Briefly press the **BACK** button.

HD on

i With this function switched off, only the analog signal of HD Radio™ stations will be accessible. After switching this function off while listening to the digital signal of a HD Radio™ station (main or sub channel), the system will switch from the digital signal to the analog signal automatically. After switching this function on while listening to a HD Radio™ station stored as a sub channel in the presets, the system will switch from the analog signal to the digital signal of the stored sub channel automatically.

Audio and FM/AM HD Radio (TM) settings

i After switching this function on while listening to a HD Radio™ station not stored in the presets, the system will switch from the analog signal to the main channel of the digital signal automatically.

Switching the function on/off

► Open the FM HD Radio™ settings menu, see section “Opening and closing the FM HD Radio™ settings menu” on page 52.



- ① Status display
- ② Menu item HD on
- ③ FM HD Radio™ settings menu

► In the FM HD Radio™ settings menu, select the menu item HD on.

Depending on the previous status, the function will be switched on or off.

The status display ① changes accordingly.

- ◆ Display = function switched on
- ◆ Display = function switched off

RDS on



- ① Station name or frequency
- ② Program type (PTY code) or no display

If the function is switched off:

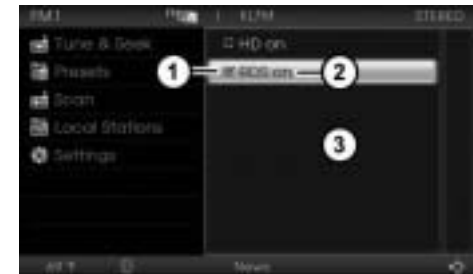
- ◆ The upper status line always shows the frequency of the currently tuned analog FM radio station.
- ◆ The lower status line shows no program type (PTY code).

If the function is switched on:

- ◆ The upper status line shows the name of the currently tuned analog FM station, if transmitted, else the frequency will be displayed.
- ◆ The lower status line shows the program type (PTY code) of the currently tuned analog FM station, if transmitted, else no program type will be displayed.

Switching the function on/off

► Open the FM HD Radio™ settings menu, see section “Opening and closing the FM HD Radio™ settings menu” on page 52.



- ① Status display
- ② Menu item RDS on
- ③ FM HD Radio™ settings menu

FM and AM mode

Audio and FM/AM HD Radio (TM) settings

- ▶ In the FM HD Radio™ settings menu, select the menu item RDS on.
Depending on the previous status, the function will be switched on or off.
The status display ① changes accordingly.
 - ◆ Display = function switched on
 - ◆ Display = function switched off

AM HD Radio™ setting

The AM HD Radio™ setting include the function HD on.

- i** With this function switched off, only the analog signal of AM HD Radio™ stations will be accessible.
After switching this function off while listening to the digital signal of a AM HD Radio™ station, the system will switch from the digital signal to the analog signal automatically.
After switching this function on while listening to the analog signal of a AM HD Radio™ station, the system will switch from the analog signal to the digital signal automatically.

Switching the function on/off

- ▶ **To open the Settings menu:** Open the AM main menu, see section “Switching to FM or AM mode” on page 42.
- ▶ In the AM main menu, select the menu item Settings.
The Settings menu appears.



- ① AM main menu
- ② Settings menu
- ③ Menu item HD on
- ④ Status display
- ⑤ Menu item Settings

- ▶ **To switch the function on/off:** In the Settings menu, select the menu item HD on.
Depending on the previous status, the function will be switched on or off.
The status display ④ changes accordingly.
 - ◆ Display = function switched on
 - ◆ Display = function switched off

XM Satellite Radio information/General operation	56
Tuning to channels	58
Storing channels	63
Settings	66
Status screens and messages	69

XM Satellite Radio mode

XM Satellite Radio information/General operation

i For information on general system operation, please refer to the chapter “Functional introduction” from page 17.

XM® Satellite Radio information

Licensing information



SATELLITE RADIO

XM® and the XM® logos are registered trademarks of XM Satellite Radio Inc.

Availability information

XM® Satellite Radio is available in the United States (except Alaska and Hawaii) and Canada.

What is XM® Satellite Radio?

XM® Satellite radio offers the reception of a multitude of stations - all in digital quality. A wide range of programs is available, e.g. music, sports, news, and entertainment, all largely without the interruption of advertisements.

Using of XM® Satellite Radio

Before using the XM® Satellite Radio service, you must sign up with the provider XM® Satellite Radio. The provider needs the Radio ID number. It can be displayed in the Tune & Seek menu after tuning to channel 0, see section “Tuning to a channel using the Tune & Seek menu” on page 58.

Without sign up, only the free-to-air channels of XM® Satellite Radio are available. Channel 1 (preview/promotional channel) is one example. But there may be other free-to-air channels.

The XM® Satellite Radio program is available for a modest monthly fee. XM® Satellite Radio may request payment of an additional fee to enable certain channels.

For further information about XM® Satellite Radio please visit the following website:

www.xmradio.com

XM Satellite Radio information/General operation

General operation

Switching to XM® Satellite Radio mode

- ▶ **Option 1:** Press the **XM** button.
- ▶ **Option 2:** Press the **MODE** button on the steering wheel repeatedly until the system switches to XM® Satellite Radio mode.

i If Navigation, INFO or PHONE is the active mode, switching to XM® Satellite Radio mode on the steering wheel does not switch the display, only the audio source will be switched accordingly.
If you want to switch the display also, you must use the **XM** button on the control panel.

The following illustration shows the XM® Satellite Radio main menu with the main menu activated.



- ① Currently active main function
 - ② Highlighted menu item in the main menu
 - ③ Currently active entertainment source
 - ④ Preset of the currently tuned channel in the presets
 - ⑤ Channel name or number of the currently tuned channel (depends on the setting, see section “Settings” on page 66)
 - ⑥ Indicator for XM® Satellite Radio mode
 - ⑦ If transmitted song title currently playing, else no display
- i** If you have tuned to channel 0, the display ⑦ shows the Radio ID number.
- ⑧ Main menu

XM Satellite Radio mode

Tuning to channels

i For information on general system operation, please refer to the chapter “Functional introduction” from page 17.

Overview

The following options are available:

- ◆ Tuning to a channel using the Tune & Seek menu, see page 58
- ◆ Tuning to a channel using the channel presets, see page 59
- ◆ Tuning to a channel using the Scan function, see page 60
- ◆ Tuning to a channel using the channel list, see page 61
- ◆ Tuning to a channel using the category list, see page 61

Tuning to a channel using the Tune & Seek menu

i Tuning to a channel via the Tune & Seek menu is restricted to channels you have subscribed.

- ▶ **To request the channel number input menu:** Open the XM® Satellite Radio main menu, see section “Switching to XM® Satellite Radio mode” on page 57.
- ▶ In the XM® Satellite Radio main menu, select the menu item Tune & Seek. The Tune & Seek menu appears.



- ① Tune & Seek menu
- ② Currently tuned channel
- ③ Info display (Artist of the currently played song and category of the currently tuned channel)

- ▶ **To tune to a channel:** Turn **↻** the controller **⊙**.

The system tunes to the next or to the previous available subscribed channel, depending on the direction of rotation.

- ▶ **To select another category:** Push **↑**/**↓** the controller **⊙**.

The next or previous category will be selected, depending on the direction of pushing. The system tunes to the first available subscribed channel of the category.

Showing the Radio ID number

- ▶ Tune to channel 0 by turning **↻** the controller **⊙**.

After tuning to channel 0, the info display **③** shows the Radio ID number instead of artist and category.

Showing details of the currently tuned channel

- ▶ Push **→** the controller **⊙**.

The Options menu appears.

Tuning to channels



- ① Menu item Details
- ② Options menu

- ▶ In the Options menu, select the menu item Details.

You will see the details screen.



- ▶ **To close the details screen:** Press the controller Ⓞ.

Tuning to a channel using the channel presets

Using the steering wheel

- ▶ Briefly press the ▼ or ▲ button.
The system will tune to the previous or next channel stored in the presets.

Using the central control panel

- ▶ **To request the presets:** Open the XM® Satellite Radio main menu, see section “Switching to XM® Satellite Radio mode” on page 57.
- ▶ In the XM® Satellite Radio main menu, select the menu item Presets.
The presets appear.



- ① Icon ♦ for the currently tuned channel
- ② Presets

- ▶ **To tune to a channel:** Select the desired channel in the presets.

i A status screen appears if the selected channel is no longer available, see section “Status screen Channel Not Available” on page 70.

Showing details of the currently tuned channel

- ▶ Highlight the currently tuned channel.
- ▶ Push ➡ the controller Ⓞ.
The Options menu appears.



- ① Menu item Details
- ② Options menu

- ▶ In the Options menu, select the menu item Details.

You will see the details screen.

Tuning to channels



- ▶ **To close the details screen:** Press the controller .

Tuning to a channel using the Scan function

- i** The Scan function searches through the subscribed channels, stops at a receivable channel, plays the channel for five seconds and goes to the next channel. The Channel 0 is not covered by the Scan function. In the settings, see section “Settings” on page 66, you can set a category filter for the Scan function.

Starting the Scan function

- ▶ Open the XM® Satellite Radio main menu, see section “Switching to XM® Satellite Radio mode” on page 57.


- ▶ In the XM® Satellite Radio main menu, select the menu item Scan.







The Scan function starts, a corresponding message is displayed.




- i** The Scan function will stop automatically, if the channel from where it has been started is reached again. It will also stop automatically, if you switch to another audio/video source. After switching back to XM® Satellite Radio again, the system tunes to the channel from where the Scan function has been started. You can also stop the Scan function manually.


Stopping the Scan function manually

- ▶ **Option 1:** Press the controller . The system will stop the Scan function.

- ▶ **Option 2:** Briefly press the  or  button on the steering wheel. The system will stop the Scan function. Button  was pressed: The system will tune to the channel stored in the preset 16. Button  was pressed: The system will tune to the channel stored in the preset 1.
- ▶ **Option 3:** Press and hold the  or  button on the steering wheel until the Scan message disappears.

The system will stop the Scan function.



Button  was pressed: The system will tune to the previous channel in the channel list.

Button  was pressed: The system will tune to the next channel in the channel list.

Tuning to a channel using the channel list

i The channel list contains only channels you have subscribed. In the settings, see section “Settings” on page 66, you can set a category filter for the list.

Using the steering wheel

- ▶ Press and hold the  or  button. The system tunes to the previous or next channel in the channel list.

Using the central control panel

- ▶ **To request the channel list:** Open the XM® Satellite Radio main menu, see section “Switching to XM® Satellite Radio mode” on page 57.
- ▶ In the XM® Satellite Radio main menu, select the menu item Channel List. The channel list appears.



- ① Icon ♦ for the currently tuned channel
- ② Channel number
- ③ Channel name
- ④ Channel list

- ▶ **To tune to a channel:** Select the desired channel in the channel list.

Showing details of the currently tuned channel

- ▶ Proceed as described previously, see section “Showing details of the currently tuned channel” on page 59.

Tuning to a channel using the category list

- ▶ **To request the category list:** Open the XM® Satellite Radio main menu, see section “Switching to XM® Satellite Radio mode” on page 57.
- ▶ In the XM® Satellite Radio main menu, select the menu item Category List. The category list appears.



- ① Icon ♦ for the currently active category
- ② Category list

- ▶ Select the desired category. The channel list according to the selected category appears.

XM Satellite Radio mode

Tuning to channels



- ① Going back to the category list
 - ② Icon ♦ for the currently tuned channel
 - ③ Channel number
 - ④ Channel name
- ▶ Select the desired channel.
 - ▶ **To go back to the category list:** Press the **BACK** button or select the menu item ①, see illustration above.

Showing details of the currently tuned channel

- ▶ Proceed as described previously, see section “Showing details of the currently tuned channel” on page 59.

i For information on general system operation, please refer to the chapter “Functional introduction” from page 17.

i There are 16 presets available in the channel presets.

Overview

The following options are available:

- ◆ Storing a channel using the Tune & Seek menu, see page 63
- ◆ Storing a channel using the channel presets, see page 64
- ◆ Storing a channel using the channel list, see page 64
- ◆ Storing a channel using the category list, see page 65

Storing a channel using the Tune & Seek menu

- ▶ **To request the Tune & Seek menu:** Open the XM[®] Satellite Radio main menu, see section “Switching to XM[®] Satellite Radio mode” on page 57.

- ▶ In the XM[®] Satellite Radio main menu, select the menu item Tune & Seek. The Tune & Seek menu appears.



- ① Tune & Seek menu

- ▶ **To tune to the desired channel:** See section “Tuning to a channel using the Tune & Seek menu” on page 58.
- ▶ **Option 1 to request the channel preset list:** After tuning to the desired channel, push ➡ the controller Ⓞ.

The Options menu appears.



- ① Menu item Store To Presets
- ② Options menu

- ▶ In the Options menu, select the menu item Store To Presets. The channel preset list appears.
- ▶ **Option 2 to request the channel preset list:** After tuning to the desired channel, press and hold the controller Ⓞ until the channel preset list appears.
- ▶ **To store the channel:** In the channel preset list, highlight the desired preset and press the controller Ⓞ. The channel is stored.

XM Satellite Radio mode

Storing channels




Storing a channel using the channel presets

- ▶ **To tune to the desired channel:** See section “Tuning to channels” on page 58.
- ▶ **To request the presets:** Open the XM® Satellite Radio main menu, see section “Switching to XM® Satellite Radio mode” on page 57.
- ▶ In the XM® Satellite Radio main menu, select the menu item Presets.

The presets appear in the form of a list. The currently tuned channel is displayed in the top status line.



- ① Currently tuned channel
- ② Preset number 2

- ▶ **To select a preset (e.g. preset number 2):** Highlight the preset number 2.
- ▶ **Option 1 to store the currently tuned station in the preset number 2:** Press and hold the controller  until the channel is stored.
- ▶ **Option 2 to store the currently tuned station in the preset number 2:** Push  the controller .

The Options menu appears.



- ① Menu item Store Channel Here
- ② Options menu

- ▶ In the Options menu, select the menu item Store Channel Here.

The channel is stored.

Storing a channel using the channel list

- ▶ **To request the channel list:** Open the XM® Satellite Radio main menu, see section “Switching to XM® Satellite Radio mode” on page 57.
- ▶ In the XM® Satellite Radio main menu, select the menu item Channel List. The channel list appears.



- ① Icon ♦ for the currently tuned channel
- ② Channel number
- ③ Channel name
- ④ Channel list

Storing channels

- ▶ **To tune to a channel:** Select the desired channel.
- ▶ **To store the currently tuned channel:** Highlight the currently tuned channel and push \rightarrow the controller \odot .
The Options menu appears.



- ① Menu item Store To Presets
- ② Options menu
- ▶ In the Options menu, select the menu item Store To Presets.
The channel preset list appears.
- ▶ In the channel preset list, highlight the desired preset and press the controller \odot .
The channel is stored.

Storing a channel using the category list

- ▶ **To request the category list:** Open the XM[®] Satellite Radio main menu, see section “Switching to XM[®] Satellite Radio mode” on page 57.
- ▶ In the XM[®] Satellite Radio main menu, select the menu item Category List.
The category list appears.
- ▶ **To select a category and tune to a channel:** See section “Tuning to a channel using the category list” on page 61.



- ① Icon \blacklozenge for the currently tuned channel
- ② Channel number
- ③ Channel name

- ▶ **To store the currently tuned channel:** Highlight the currently tuned channel and push \rightarrow the controller \odot .
The Options menu appears.



- ① Menu item Store To Presets
- ② Options menu
- ▶ In the Options menu, select the menu item Store To Presets.
The channel preset list appears.
- ▶ In the channel preset list, highlight the desired preset and press the controller \odot .
The channel is stored.

XM Satellite Radio mode

Settings

Overview

The XM® Radio settings include the following functions:

- ◆ Setting the display in the upper status line, see page 66
- ◆ Setting the category filter for the channel list, see page 67
- ◆ Setting the category search, see page 68

Opening the XM® Radio settings menu

- ▶ Open the XM® Satellite Radio main menu, see section “Switching to XM® Satellite Radio mode” on page 57.
- ▶ In the XM® Satellite Radio main menu, select the menu item Settings.

The Settings menu appears.



- ① Settings menu
- ② Menu item XM Radio

- ▶ In the Settings menu, select the menu item XM Radio.

The XM® Radio settings menu appears.



- ① XM® Radio settings menu

Closing the XM® Radio settings menu

- ▶ Briefly press the **BACK** button.

Setting the display in the upper status line

i With this function, you can set whether the channel number or the channel name is displayed in the upper status line.

- ▶ Open the XM® Radio settings menu, see section “Opening the XM® Radio settings menu” on page 66.





- ① Topmost menu item
- ② XM® Radio settings menu

The labelling of the topmost menu item ① always shows the current setting. It will change with every selection.

Possible labellings:

- ◆ Display by CH Nr. (Upper status line shows channel number instead of channel name)
- ◆ Display by CH Name (Upper status line shows channel name instead of channel number)

The current setting is also identified by the icon to the left of the topmost menu item ①.

- ◆ Icon  = Upper status line shows channel number instead of channel name
- ◆ Icon  = Upper status line shows channel name instead of channel number

- ▶ **To change the setting:** In the XM® Radio settings menu ②, select the topmost menu item ①.

Setting the category filter for the channel list

i With this function, you can set one or more category filters. After that, only channels matching to the filter setting are shown in the channel list. Additionally, the Scan function plays only channels matching to the filter setting.

- ▶ Open the XM® Radio settings menu, see section “Opening the XM® Radio settings menu” on page 66.



- ① XM® Radio settings menu
- ② Menu item Category Filter

- ▶ **To request the category list:** In the XM® Radio settings menu, select the menu item Category Filter.

You will see the category list.



- ① Status display
- ② Category filter
- ③ Category filter list

- ▶ **To set a category filter:** Select the desired filter.

The status display ① changes accordingly.

- ◆ Display = Filter is activated
- ◆ Display = Filter is deactivated

Settings

i You can activate several filters at the same time.

- ◆ If you activate the filter “All”, all other filters are automatically activated.
- ◆ If you deactivate the filter “All”, all other activated filters are automatically deactivated.
- ◆ If all filters are activated, deactivating another filter than “All” will also deactivate the filter “All”.

▶ **To close the category list and go back to the XM® Radio settings menu:** Briefly press the **BACK** button.

Setting the category search

i When setting this function, tuning operations via the **▼** or **▲** buttons on the steering wheel are restricted to channels with the same category as the currently active channel.

▶ Open the XM® Radio settings menu, see section “Opening the XM® Radio settings menu” on page 66.



- ① Status display
- ② Menu item Category Search
- ③ XM® Radio settings menu

▶ **To set the category search:** In the XM® Radio settings menu, select the menu item Category Search.

The status display ① changes accordingly.

- ◆ Display = Function is set
- ◆ Display = Function is not set

Status screens and messages

Status screen Channel Not Authorized

If you try to tune from the presets to a channel which is no longer subscribed, the status screen ② shown below appears. Additionally, the upper status line shows the status message ①.



① Status message Channel Not Authorized

② Status screen

► **To close the status screen:** Press the controller Ⓞ.

The status screen and status message disappears and the system tunes to the channel heard before.

If the currently tuned channel becomes unsubscribed, the same status screen and the same status message as described above appears.

► **To close the status screen:** Press the controller Ⓞ.

The status screen and status message disappears and the system tunes to the channel 1.

Status screen No Signal

If the received signal is not strong enough, the status screen ② shown below appears. Additionally, the upper status line shows the status message ①.



① Status message No Signal

② Status screen

► **To close the status screen:** Press the controller Ⓞ.

The status screen ② disappears, but the status message ① will be displayed as long as the received signal is not strong enough.

In this case, operation of the system is possible, but the status screen ② appears again, as soon as you try to tune to another channel.

If the received signal is strong enough again, the status message ① disappears and the system tunes automatically to your last tuned channel.

Status screen Loading

If the tuner acquires audio or information/decoding data, the status screen ② shown below appears. Additionally, the upper status line shows the status message ①.

i While listening to XM[®] Satellite Radio, the status message ① may appear depending on the signal state.

XM Satellite Radio mode

Status screens and messages



- ① Status message Loading
- ② Status screen

► **To close the status screen:** Press the controller .

The status screen ② disappears, but the status message ① will be displayed until the process has been finished.

In this state, operation of the system is possible, but the status screen ② appears again, as soon as you try to tune to another channel.

If the process has been finished, the status message ① disappears and the system tunes automatically to your last tuned channel.

Status screen Channel Not Available

If you tune from the presets to a channel which is no longer available or if the currently tuned channel is no longer available, the status screen ② shown below appears. Additionally, the upper status line shows the status message ①.



- ① Status message Channel Not Available
- ② Status screen

► **To close the status screen:** Press the controller .

The status screen and status message ① disappears.

If you have tried to tune to a channel which is no longer available, the system tunes to the channel heard before.

If the currently tuned channel was no longer available, the system tunes to channel 1.



Status screen Check Antenna

If the antenna is not connected properly, the status screen ② shown below appears. Additionally, the upper status line shows the status message ①.





- ① Status message Check Antenna
- ② Status screen



- ▶ **To close the status screen:** Press the controller .

The status screen  disappears, but the status message  will be displayed until the antenna is connected properly.

Status screen Channel Off Air

If you tune to a channel which is off air or if the currently tuned channel goes off air, the status screen  shown below appears. Additionally, the upper status line shows the status message .



-  Status message Channel Off Air
-  Status screen

- ▶ **To close the status screen:** Press the controller .

The status screen and status message disappears.

If you have tried to tune to a channel which is off air, the system tunes to the channel heard before.

If the currently tuned channel was going off air, the system tunes to channel 1.

XM Satellite Radio mode

Status screens and messages

General information	74
Loading the disc changer magazine	79
Ejecting the disc changer magazine	82
Audio disc playback	84
Video DVD playback	94
Video CD playback	108

General information

Safety instructions

WARNING

The Driver Information System is a class 1 laser product.



Invisible laser radiation poses a risk of injury to the eyes if the cover is opened or damaged.

- ◆ Do not open the housing.
- ◆ The Driver Information System does not contain any user-serviceable parts.
- ◆ For safety reasons, any maintenance work must be performed exclusively by qualified service experts.

License notice



Manufactured under license under U.S. Patent #'s: 5,451,942;5,956,674; 5,974,380; 5,978,762; 6,487,535 & other U.S. and worldwide patents issued & pending. DTS and DTS Digital Surround are registered trademarks and the DTS logos and Symbol are trademarks of DTS, Inc. © 1996-2007 DTS, Inc. All Rights Reserved.



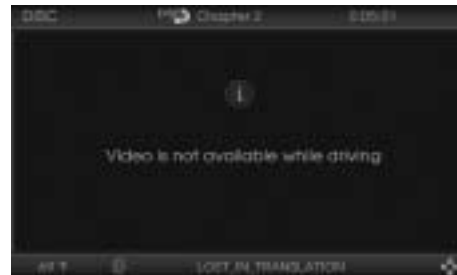
Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. Dolby and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.

Automatic video lock-out

i Switching the gear is described in detail in the vehicle's operation manual. Please pay attention to the corresponding descriptions and safety instructions in the vehicle's operation manual.

In the interest of safety, video CD/DVD playback is only possible if the gear stick is in position **P**.

Else you will see a corresponding message in the display.



The system switches the picture back on as soon as the gear stick is in position **P**.

The video CD/DVD playback sound is not affected by the lock-out.

Supported discs

The Driver Information System supports the following CDs and DVDs:

- ◆ CD-DA (audio CD)
- ◆ CD-ROM
- ◆ CD-R/RW
- ◆ VCD (video CD)
- ◆ DVD-Video (single- and dual-layer)
- ◆ DVD-Audio
- ◆ DVD-ROM (single- and dual-layer)
- ◆ DVD-R/RW

i Audio CDs with copy protection do not comply with the standard and may not be able to be played.
It may be possible to play DVD-R and DVD-RW discs, however this cannot be guaranteed.

Permissible file systems

- ◆ ISO9660/Joliet for CDs
- ◆ UDF for DVDs

Multisession CDs

On multisession CDs, the content of the first session determines how the Driver Information System handles the CD.

If the first session contains data in the audio CD format, for example, and the second session contains MP3 or wma tracks, the system will handle the CD as a conventional audio CD. This means that the MP3 or wma tracks cannot be accessed.

If the first session contains MP3 or wma tracks, for example, and the second session contains data in the audio CD format, the system will not handle the CD as an audio CD. In this case, only the MP3 or wma tracks can be accessed.

Mixed Mode CD/CD-Extra

Mixed Mode CDs are CDs that contain data in the audio CD format as well as other data, such as pictures. The Driver Information System can play back neither the audio data nor the other data from this type of CD.

CDs with the designation “CD-Extra” can have the same content as Mixed Mode CDs. With CD-Extra CDs, however, the data is stored in a different manner. The Driver Information System can play back the audio data from these CDs.

i These CDs can also bear the designation “CD Plus” or “Enhanced CD”.

MP3 or wma discs

File structure

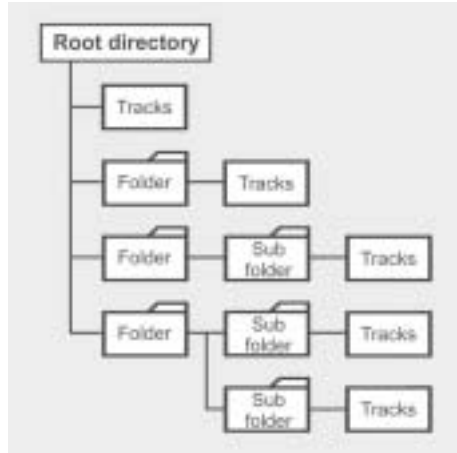
When creating MP3 or wma discs, you can organize the tracks into folders. Folders can also contain further folders (subfolders). A disc may have a maximum of 255 folders in total. A maximum of 255 tracks and 255 subfolders are permissible per folder, with a maximum nesting depth of 8 folder levels.

The system cannot access more deeply nested folders. The same applies to the tracks stored in these folders.

A maximum of 4000 tracks in total are permissible per disc.

Below you will find an example of a file structure.

General information



Track and folder names

When creating MP3 or wma discs, you can assign names to the tracks and to the folders. The Driver Information System uses these names for the corresponding display when playing the disc. Empty folders or folders containing data other than MP3 or wma tracks are not displayed by the system.

i The Driver Information System does not support ID3 tags.

Please note the following when assigning track names:

- ◆ Track names must contain at least one character and should not contain more than one hundred characters. The system cannot display names with more than one hundred characters.
- ◆ Track names must have the extension “mp3” (MP3 tracks) or „wma“ (wma tracks).
- ◆ A period must appear between the track name and the extension.

Example of a correct MP3 track name:
Track 1.mp3

The system will not recognize an MP3 or wma track if:

- ◆ there is no period between the track name and the extension
- ◆ the extension is missing

Supported format

The Driver Information System supports the wma format (without digital rights management DRM) and the MPEG1 audio layer 3 format.

i In everyday speech, the MPEG1 audio layer 3 format has been replaced by the designation “MP3”.

Supported bit and sampling rates

- ◆ Fixed and variable bit rates up to 320 kbps
- ◆ Sampling rates from 24 kHz to 48 kHz

i Only use MP3 or wma tracks with a bit rate of 128 kbps or higher and with a sampling rate of 44.1 kHz or higher. Lower rates may result in audibly impaired quality. This is particularly true if the surround function is activated.

Note on copyright

The music tracks that you can create for MP3 or wma playback or can play back in MP3 or wma mode are generally copyright-protected under applicable international and national laws.

In many countries, the reproduction of copyrighted material is not permitted, even if only for personal use, without the express prior consent of the copyright holder.

Please check the current copyright laws for your country and comply with them.

These restrictions do not apply, for example, to your own compositions and recordings, or to recordings for which authorization has been obtained from the copyright holder.

Notes on discs



CAUTION

Do not attach stickers or labels of any kind to discs. They may come loose and damage the Driver Information System.

The Driver Information System has been designed for playback of discs conforming to the standard IEC 60908. Therefore, only discs with a maximum thickness of 1.3 mm (0.0472") can be used. If a thicker disc is used, the system may be damaged.

Do not use 8 cm (3.15") diameter discs, not even with an adapter. Only use round, 12 cm (4.72") diameter discs.

Do not insert any other objects than the discs described above into the disc slot. Damage to the disc changer may occur.

Do not load warped or poor quality discs into the magazine as damage to the disc changer may occur.

(continued)



CAUTION

(continued)

Do not attempt to insert more than one disc into the disc slot at the same time. This will destroy the disc changer.

Do not attempt to grab or pull a disc out while it is pulled into the disc changer by the self-loading mechanism. Damage to the disc changer and the disc could occur.

Off-road or rough surface driving may cause the disc to skip. Do not use the disc changer when driving in such conditions as damage to the system or to the disc surface could occur.

- ◆ Audio CDs with copy protection do not comply with the standard and may not be able to be played.
- ◆ When playing copied discs, problems may occur with the playback.

DISC mode

General information

- ◆ A wide variety of discs, burning software and burners are available. Due to this wide variety, we cannot guarantee that the system will be able to play every user-burned disc.
- ◆ There may be problems playing back user-burned CDs with a storage capacity of more than 700 MB. These CDs do not meet current valid standards.
- ◆ The discs must only be labeled using pens specially designed for this purpose.
- ◆ After use, put the discs back into the box.
- ◆ Protect the discs from heat and direct sunlight.

Notes on the care of discs

- ◆ Only touch the discs at the edges.
- ◆ Handle discs with care in order to avoid malfunctions during playback.
- ◆ Avoid scratching, leaving fingerprints and dust on the discs.
- ◆ Clean the discs occasionally with a commercially available cleaning cloth. Always wipe in a straight line from the inside outwards, never in a circular motion.

Notes on playback

If it is raining, at high humidity or after heating was working, the humidity may condense at the optical lens of the disc changer.

In this case, the disc changer cannot work well. Remove the disc from the disc changer and wait until the optical lens is dried.

Loading the disc changer magazine

i For information on general system operation, please refer to the chapter “Functional introduction” from page 17.

Safety instruction

WARNING

If you load the magazine when driving, you may be distracted from the traffic situation, thus increasing the accident hazard.

Only load the magazine when the vehicle is stationary.

General information

The Driver Information System features a built-in disc changer magazine with six compartments.

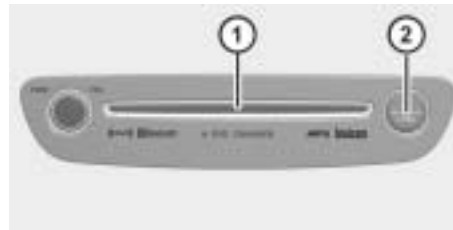
If the disc is printed on one side, this side must face upwards when loading the magazine. If neither side is printed, the side to be played must face downwards.

Loading the magazine automatically terminates playback of another disc.

Loading the first available empty magazine compartment

i The following description only applies to scenarios where a mode other than DISC mode is active, for example in PHONE mode.

If you wish to load a magazine compartment when DISC mode is active, please proceed as described in the section “Loading a specific empty magazine compartment”, see page 80.



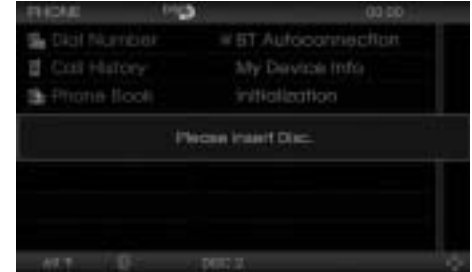
- ① Disc slot
- ② **LOAD** button

CAUTION

Only insert a disc into the disc slot ① when the display shows the message Please insert Disc. The Driver Information System may be damaged if you insert a disc before this message is displayed.

▶ Briefly press the **LOAD** button.

After a short time, the system will prompt you to insert a disc with the message Please insert Disc.



▶ Insert a disc into the slot ①.

The system will load the disc into the appropriate magazine compartment and then play it.

i If you wait too long before inserting the disc, the system will abort the loading procedure.

DISC mode

Loading the disc changer magazine

Loading a specific empty magazine compartment

Opening the DISC main menu

i You cannot open the DISC main menu if the magazine is completely ejected. The message No playable disc available will appear instead. If this happens, proceed as described in the previous section “Loading the first available empty magazine compartment”. The system will automatically load magazine compartment 1 in this case.

▶ Press the **DISC/AUX** button.

The system will switch to either DISC or AUX mode.

If the system switches to AUX mode:

▶ Press the **DISC/AUX** button again.

The system will switch to DISC mode.

▶ After the system has switched to DISC mode, press and hold the **BACK** button.

The DISC main menu appears.



- ① Occupied magazine compartments
- ② DISC main menu
- ③ Empty magazine compartments

Selecting the magazine compartment to load

▶ Highlight an empty magazine compartment in the DISC main menu ②.

i If you highlight a magazine compartment that is already occupied, then the system will automatically load the disc into the first available empty compartment.

Loading the selected magazine compartment



- ① Disc slot
- ② **LOAD** button

CAUTION

Only insert a disc into the disc slot ① when the display shows the message Please insert Disc. The Driver Information System may be damaged if you insert a disc before this message is displayed.

▶ Briefly press the **LOAD** button.

After a short time, the system will prompt you to insert a disc with the message Please insert Disc.

Loading the disc changer magazine



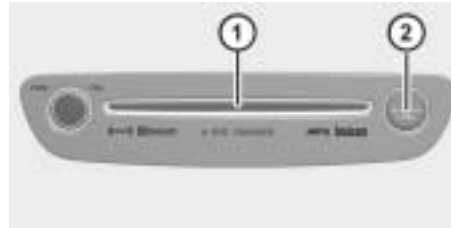
- ▶ Insert a disc into the slot ①.

The system will load the disc into the appropriate magazine compartment and then play it.

- i** If you wait too long before inserting the disc, the system will abort the loading procedure.

Loading all empty magazine compartments

- i** You can also load all empty magazine compartments in modes other than DISC mode, for example it also works in PHONE mode.



- ① Disc slot
- ② **LOAD** button

CAUTION

Only insert a disc into the disc slot ① when the display shows the message Please insert Disc. The Driver Information System may be damaged if you insert a disc before this message is displayed.

- ▶ Press and hold the **LOAD** button until you hear a beep sound.
The system prompts you to insert a disc with the message Please insert Disc.



- ▶ Insert a disc into the slot ①.

The system will load the disc and once more prompt you to insert the next disc with the message Please insert Disc.

- i** If you wait too long before inserting the disc or do not load a further disc, the system will stop the loading procedure and play the last inserted disc.
- ▶ Repeat the last step after each prompt until all of the magazine compartments have been loaded.
After the last magazine compartment has been loaded, the system will automatically play the appropriate disc.

Ejecting the disc changer magazine

- i** For information on general system operation, please refer to the chapter “Functional introduction” from page 17.

WARNING

If you eject the magazine when driving, you may be distracted from the traffic situation, thus increasing the accident hazard.

Only eject the magazine when the vehicle is stationary.


If the disc slot is obstructed and you eject the magazine, this may cause fire or electrical shock and may damage the system.


Only eject the magazine if the disc slot is not obstructed.

Ejecting the magazine compartment containing the last disc played

- i** You can also eject this magazine compartment if a mode other than DISC mode is active, for example in PHONE mode. If the last disc played is no longer available, the system will eject the first available occupied magazine compartment. If you wish to eject a specific magazine compartment when DISC mode is active, please proceed as described in the section “Ejecting a specific magazine compartment”, see page 82.



- ① Disc slot
②  button

- ▶ Briefly press the  button.
The system will eject the respective disc.

- ▶ Remove the disc from the slot ①.



- i** If you wait too long before removing the disc, the system will automatically pull it back in after a certain time.

Ejecting a specific magazine compartment

- ▶ Press the  button.

The system will switch to either DISC or AUX mode.

If the system switches to AUX mode:

- ▶ Press the  button again.
The system will switch to DISC mode.
- ▶ After the system has switched to DISC mode, press and hold the  button.
The DISC main menu appears.

Ejecting the disc changer magazine



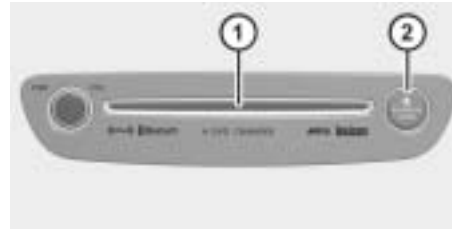
- ① Occupied magazine compartments
- ② DISC main menu
- ③ Empty magazine compartments


Selecting the magazine compartment to eject


- ▶ Highlight an occupied magazine compartment in the DISC main menu.

i If you highlight a magazine compartment that is already empty, then the system will eject the disc currently playing.

Ejecting the selected magazine compartment



- ① Disc slot
- ②  button

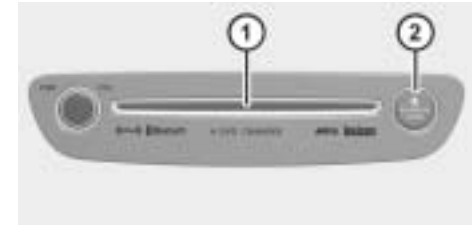
- ▶ Briefly press the  button.
The system will eject the disc.

- ▶ Remove the disc from the slot ①.


i If you wait too long before removing the disc, the system will automatically pull it back in after a certain time.

Ejecting all magazine compartments

i You can also eject all magazine compartments in modes other than DISC mode, for example it also works in PHONE mode.



- ① Disc slot
- ②  button

- ▶ Press and hold the  button until the first disc will be ejected.

- ▶ Remove the disc from the slot ①.

The system will eject the next disc.

i If you wait too long before removing the disc, the system will automatically pull it back in after a certain time and abort ejecting of the magazine compartments.

- ▶ Repeat the last step until the magazine is empty.

Audio disc playback

i For information on general system operation, please refer to the chapter “Functional introduction” from page 17.

Switching to DISC mode and playing discs

► **Option 1:** Load the magazine with an appropriate disc, see the section “Loading the disc changer magazine” from page 79.

► **Option 2:** Press the **DISC/AUX** button.

The system will switch to either DISC or AUX mode.

If the system switches to AUX mode:

► Press the **DISC/AUX** button again.

► **Option 3:** Press the **MODE** button on the steering wheel repeatedly until the system switches to DISC mode.

i If Navigation, INFO or PHONE is the active mode, switching to DISC mode on the steering wheel does not switch the display, only the audio source will be switched accordingly.

If you want to switch the display also, you must use the **DISC/AUX** button on the control panel.

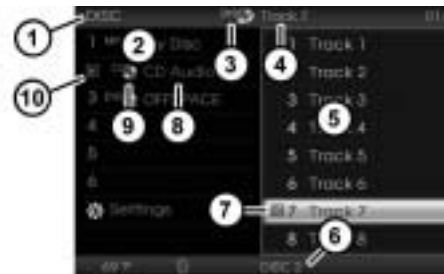
After switching to DISC mode, the system will resume playing the last disc played if available, otherwise it will play the next available disc.




If it is a video disc, please select an audio CD in the DISC main menu, see the section “Selecting and playing discs” on page 97.

If the magazine is empty, the message No playable disc available appears. If this happens, load the magazine with an appropriate disc, see the section “Loading the disc changer magazine” from page 79.

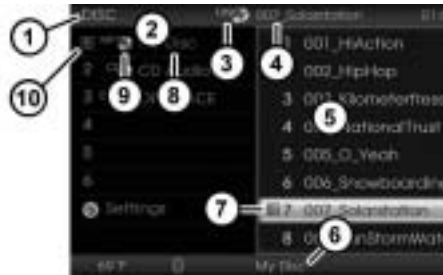
DISC main menu




During playback of an audio CD



- ① Currently active main function
- ② DISC main menu with list of discs
- ③ Currently active entertainment source
- ④ Track currently playing
- ⑤ Track list of the disc currently playing
- ⑥ Name of the disc currently playing
- ⑦ Play icon  for the track currently playing
- ⑧ Disc currently playing
- ⑨ Icon  for an audio CD
- ⑩ Play icon  for the disc currently playing

During playback of an MP3 or wma CD






- ① Currently active main function
- ② DISC main menu with list of discs
- ③ Currently active entertainment source
- ④ Track currently playing
- ⑤ Track or folder list of the disc currently playing
- ⑥ Name of the disc currently playing
- ⑦ Play icon  for the track currently playing or the current folder
- ⑧ Disc currently playing
- ⑨ Icon  for an MP3 CD
- ⑩ Play icon  for the disc currently playing

i The display ⑥ shows also the folder currently playing if the track currently playing is stored in a folder.

During playback of an audio DVD



- ① Currently active main function
- ② DISC main menu with list of discs
- ③ Currently active entertainment source
- ④ Track currently playing
- ⑤ Track list of the disc currently playing
- ⑥ Name of the disc currently playing
- ⑦ Play icon  for the track currently playing
- ⑧ Disc currently playing
- ⑨ Icon  for an audio DVD
- ⑩ Play icon  for the disc currently playing

Displaying the disc, track and folder names

The list of discs in the DISC main menu (please see ② in the previous three illustrations) shows the discs available in the magazine by their names, provided the names are stored on the discs. If there are no names stored, the respective disc type is displayed.

The track or folder list (please see ⑤ in the previous three illustrations) shows the tracks or folders on the disc currently playing.

The number display on the left of each entry in the track or folder list shows a maximum of three digits. In case of list entries beyond 999, the number display will be truncated. Example: List entry 1006 will be displayed as 006.

In the case of audio CDs and audio DVDs, the tracks are displayed with their names if the names are stored on the disc. If there are no names stored, "Track" followed by the appropriate track number is displayed.

DISC mode

Audio disc playback

In the case of MP3 or wma CDs, the system uses the names assigned during creation of the CD to display the CD, track and folder names. Any ID3 tags in the files are ignored.

If a track or folder name is too long, the system will display it in abbreviated form. This is indicated by the three dots “...” at the end of the name. If this happens, you can call up a complete name display.



① Abbreviated track name

You can call up a details display if you want to see the complete track name.

In case of MP3 or WMA discs, you can call up a play info display if you want to see further information.

Calling up a details or play info display

- ▶ **To open the Options menu:** Highlight the desired track or folder and push ➔ the controller Ⓞ.

The Options menu appears.

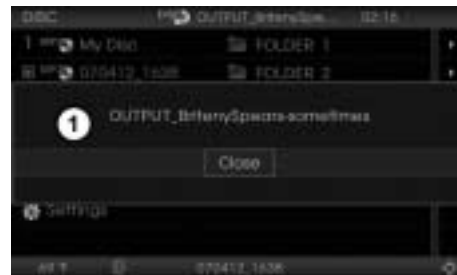


① Options menu

- ▶ **To call up the details display:** In the Options menu, select the menu item Details.

In case of an audio disc, the details display containing the complete track name appears.

In case of a MP3 or WMA disc, the details display containing the complete file name appears.



① Details display

- ▶ **To close the details display:** Press the controller Ⓞ.
- ▶ **To call up the play info display (MP3 and WMA disc only):** In the Options menu, select the menu item Play Info.


The play info display of the track currently playing appears, containing several information.



- ① Current folder name
- ② Current file name
- ③ Current song title
- ④ Current album title
- ⑤ Current artist name

i In order to display the current song title, album title and artist name, these information must be stored as ID3 tags inside the MP3 or WMA track.


If you select another track or if the system plays the next track, the play info display will not be closed and it will be updated automatically.

- ▶ **To close the play info display:** Press the controller .

Unknown discs

Discs that have not yet been played after the magazine has been loaded are not known to the system. They are displayed as follows.



- ① Icon  for an unknown disc
- ② Display for the unknown content of the unknown disc







As soon as an unknown disc is played, display takes place as previously described in the section “Displaying the disc, track and folder names”, see page 85.

The system does not store the data, therefore after a disc is removed from the magazine and reinserted at a later date, it may be unknown to the system once more.

Selecting and playing discs

Selecting using the central control panel



- ① Icon  for a video CD
- ② Icon  for a video DVD
- ③ Icon  for an audio DVD
- ④ Icon  for an audio CD
- ⑤ Icon  for an MP3 CD
- ⑥ DISC main menu with list of discs
- ⑦ Play icon  for the disc currently playing

- ▶ Select an audio disc in the list of discs in the DISC main menu.

DISC mode

Audio disc playback

Selecting using the steering wheel

- ▶ Press and hold the **▼** or **▲** button.

The system will play the previous or next disc, depending on the button pressed.

- i** The previous or next disc may also be a video disc, depending on how the magazine compartments are loaded.

Pausing or resuming playback



- ① Play icon **▶**
- ② Track currently playing (highlighted)
- ▶ **To pause:** Highlight the track currently playing and press the controller **⊙**.
The play icon **▶** will change to the pause icon **⏸**.

- ▶ **To resume:** Highlight the track currently playing once more and press the controller **⊙**.

The pause icon **⏸** will change to the play icon **▶**.

Selecting tracks

- i** “Skip track forward” skips to the next track. “Skip track back” skips to the beginning of the current track, if the track has been playing for more than 10 seconds. If the track has been playing for less than 10 seconds, it will skip to the beginning of the previous track.

Skipping tracks forward/back

- ▶ Briefly press the **▲** or **▼** button on the steering wheel.

The system will execute the track skip corresponding to the button pressed.

Track list

- i** You can select a specific track for playback directly in the track list.
- ▶ Select the desired track in the track list.

Selecting folders and MP3 or wma tracks

- i** This function is only available for MP3 or wma CDs. Folders can only be selected if the MP3 or wma tracks were organized into folders when the CD was created.



- ① Menu item for the folder change function
- ② Folder
- ③ Play icon **▶** for track currently playing
- ④ Track
- ⑤ Highlighted track

- ▶ **To switch to the next folder level up:** Select the menu item ①.
The display will change accordingly.

Audio disc playback

- ▶ **To open a folder:** Select the desired folder.

You will see the tracks stored in this folder.

- ▶ **To play a track:** Select the desired track.

Selecting a group

- i** This function is only available for audio DVDs. The music tracks on an audio DVD can be organized into up to nine groups.

- ▶ **To open the Options menu:** Highlight any track and push \rightarrow the controller \odot . The Options menu appears.



- ① Options menu

- ▶ **To open the Group menu:** In the Options menu, select the menu item Change Group.

The Group menu appears. The group currently being played is marked with the play icon \square .



- ① Play icon \square
- ② Group menu

- ▶ Select the desired group.

The system will play the first track in the chosen group.

Fast forwarding/reversing

- ▶ **To open the Options menu:** Highlight any track and push \rightarrow the controller \odot .



- ① Options menu

- ▶ **To start forwarding:** In the Options menu, select the menu item FF and press and hold the controller \odot .
- ▶ **To start reversing:** In the Options menu, select the menu item REW and press and hold the controller \odot .
- ▶ **To terminate forwarding/reversing:** Release the controller \odot .

- i** During fast forwarding/reversing the track time changes are displayed in the upper status line.

DISC mode

Audio disc playback

Repeating tracks or folders

i This function will keep repeating a track or folder until it is cancelled. In the case of MP3 or wma CDs, repetition of folders is only possible if the CD contains folders. Tracks in subfolders within the folder to be repeated will be ignored.

- ▶ Highlight the desired track or folder.



- ① Folder
- ② Highlighted track
- ③ Track

- ▶ **To open the Options menu:** Push → the controller (○).





- ① Status display
- ② Options menu

- ▶ **To switch the function on/off:** In the Options menu, select the menu item Repeat Track or Repeat Folder.

Depending on the previous status, the function will be switched on or off. The status display ① changes accordingly.

- ◆ Display = function switched on
- ◆ Display = function switched off

When the function is switched on, the icon  (repeat track) or  (repeat folder) additionally appears on the right in the top status line.

i The repeat track function switches off automatically when you select another track.

The repeat folder function switches off automatically when you select a track in another folder.

Both functions are switching off automatically when you:

- ◆ eject a magazine compartment,
- ◆ select another disc,
- ◆ switch to a different audio or video signal source, for example to FM,
- ◆ switch the system off and back on again.

Random play

Switching random play of all tracks on/off

i Random play of all tracks plays all tracks on a current audio or MP3 or wma CD in random order.


In the case of audio DVDs, random play is restricted to the tracks in the currently active group.

Audio disc playback

- ▶ Highlight the track currently playing.



① Highlighted track currently playing.

i You can tell the track currently playing by the play icon .

- ▶ **To open the Options menu:** Push \rightarrow the controller .



① Status display


② Options menu

- ▶ In the Options menu, select the menu item Random Disc.

Depending on the previous status, the function will be switched on or off.

The status display ① changes accordingly.

- ◆ Display = function switched on
- ◆ Display = function switched off

When the function is switched on, the icon  additionally appears on the right in the top status line.

- i** The function switches off automatically when you:

- ◆ select any track,
- ◆ eject a magazine compartment,
- ◆ select another disc,
- ◆ switch to a different audio or video signal source, for example to FM,
- ◆ switch the system off and back on again.

Switching random play within a specific folder on/off

i Random play within a specific folder only applies to MP3 or wma CDs. It plays all tracks in a specific folder in random order. Tracks in subfolders within the specific folder will be ignored.

- ▶ Highlight the desired folder.



① Highlighted folder

- ▶ **To open the Options menu:** Push \rightarrow the controller .

DISC mode

Audio disc playback




- ① Status display
- ② Options menu

▶ In the Options menu, select the menu item Random Folder.

Depending on the previous status, the function will be switched on or off.

The status display ① changes accordingly.

- ◆ Display = function switched on
- ◆ Display = function switched off

When the function is switched on, the icon  additionally appears on the right in the top status line.

i The function switches off automatically when you:

- ◆ select any track,
- ◆ eject a magazine compartment,
- ◆ select another disc,
- ◆ switch to a different audio or video signal source, for example to FM,
- ◆ switch the system off and back on again.

Scan function

i This function plays about 10 seconds of each track on the disc currently playing and then skips to the next track.

▶ Highlight the track from which you want the function to start.



- ① Highlighted track

▶ **To open the Options menu:** Push → the controller .




- ① Status display
- ② Options menu

▶ **To switch the function on/off:** In the Options menu, select the menu item Scan.

Depending on the previous status, the function will be switched on or off.

The status display ① changes accordingly.

- ◆ Display = function switched on
- ◆ Display = function switched off

When the function is switched on, the icon  appears additionally on the right in the top status line.

i The function switches off automatically when you:

- ◆ select any track,
- ◆ eject a magazine compartment,
- ◆ select another disc,
- ◆ switch to a different audio or video signal source, for example to FM,
- ◆ switch the system off and back on again.

It also switches off automatically when it reaches the track where it started.

Audio settings

Please see the section “Audio settings” on page 33 for a description of the audio settings.

Video DVD playback

i For information on general system operation, please refer to the chapter “Functional introduction” from page 17.

Video DVD playback conditions

i Retailers supply video DVDs that do not meet the standards.
These video DVDs may cause picture, sound or other playback problems.

DVD region code

Most of the video DVDs are encoded with a region code intended to restrict the area of the world in which they can be played. Information about which region code a DVD has can usually be found either on the video DVD itself or on the sleeve.

In order to play a video DVD, the video DVD and the video DVD player must have the same region code.

Below you will find the possible region codes and the countries assigned.

Region code	Country
0	No region code (DVD can be played with all DVD players independently of the player's region code)
1	Bermuda, Canada, Cayman Islands, U.S.A. and U.S.A. territories
2	Egypt, Europe, Greenland, Japan, Lesotho, Middle East, South Africa, Swaziland
3	Hongkong, Macau, Parts of South East Asia, South Korea, Taiwan, The Philippines
4	Australia, Central America, Latin America (including Mexico), New Guinea, New Zealand, Oceania, Papua, The Caribbean

Region code	Country
5	African countries not explicitly included in other regions, Indian subcontinent, Mongolia, North Korea, Seychelles, countries included in the former Soviet Union
6	China (except Macau and Hongkong)
7	Reserved
8	Cruise ships, Airlines etc.

For example, DVD players sold in the U.S.A. have the region code **2**, and video DVDs sold in the U.S.A. can have the region code **0** or **2**.

So, if you insert a DVD with a region code except **0** or **2** into an U.S.A. DVD player (e.g. the disc changer of the Driver Information System), the DVD will not be played.


TV Standard

The Driver Information System can play video DVDs that meet PAL or NTSC TV standard.

Information on this can usually be found either on the DVD itself or on the DVD sleeve.

Functional restrictions

It may be the case that some functions or actions may not be possible at certain times, or may not be possible in general, depending on the video DVD.


When such functions or actions are activated, they are indicated by the icon  in the top left corner of the display.



① Icon 

Switching to DISC mode and playing discs


► **Option 1:** Load the magazine with an appropriate disc, see the section “Loading the disc changer magazine” from page 79.


► **Option 2:** Press the  button.


The system will switch to either DISC or AUX mode.

If the system switches to AUX mode:

► Press the  button again.

► **Option 3:** Press the  button on the steering wheel repeatedly until the system switches to DISC mode.

 If Navigation, INFO or PHONE is the active mode, switching to DISC mode on the steering wheel does not switch the display, only the audio source will be switched accordingly.

If you want to switch the display also, you must use the  button on the control panel.

After switching to DISC mode, the system will resume playing the last disc played if available, otherwise it will play the next available disc.

If it is an audio disc, please select a video DVD in the DISC main menu, see the section “Selecting and playing discs” on page 87.

If it is a video CD, please select a video DVD in the DISC main menu, see the section “Selecting and playing discs” on page 97.

If the magazine is empty, the message No playable disc available appears. If this happens, load the magazine with an appropriate disc, see the section “Loading the disc changer magazine” from page 79.

Playback will not start if the DVD has the wrong region code. Instead you will see an appropriate message.

After video playback starts, the system will show the video content as a full-screen display.

DISC mode

Video DVD playback



You can open the following menus during playback:

- ◆ DISC main menu, see page 96
- ◆ Native DVD menu, see page 101
- ◆ On-screen menu, see page 105



DISC main menu

Opening the DISC main menu

- ▶ During video playback, press and hold the **BACK** button until the DISC main menu appears.

i Video playback continues in the background when the DISC main menu is open.



- ① Currently active main function
- ② DISC main menu with list of discs
- ③ Currently active entertainment source
- ④ Chapter currently playing
- ⑤ Content area with native DVD menu
- ⑥ Name of the disc currently playing
- ⑦ Open the Settings menu
- ⑧ Disc currently playing
- ⑨ Icon  for a video DVD
- ⑩ Play icon  for the disc currently playing

Closing the DISC main menu and returning to video full-screen display

- ▶ **Option 1:** In the content area ⑤ with the native DVD menu select the menu item Return to Screen.
- ▶ **Option 2:** Press the **BACK** button.

Displaying the disc name

The list of discs in the DISC main menu ② shows the discs available in the magazine by their names, provided the names are stored on the discs. If there are no names stored, the respective disc type will be displayed.


If a video DVD is highlighted in the list of discs in the DISC main menu ②, then the content area ⑤ will display the native DVD menu if the DVD has the correct region code.

If it does not have the correct region code, the content area ⑤ will display the message Wrong DVD region code.

Unknown discs

Discs that have not yet been played after the magazine has been loaded are not known to the system. They are displayed as follows.



- ① Icon  for an unknown disc
- ② Display for the unknown content of the unknown disc

As soon as an unknown disc is played, display takes place as previously described in the section "Displaying the disc name", see page 96.







i The system does not store the data, therefore after a disc is removed from the magazine and reinserted at a later date, it may be unknown to the system once more.

Selecting and playing discs

Selecting using the central control panel

▶ **To open the DISC main menu:** During video playback, press and hold the **BACK** button until the DISC main menu appears.



- ① Icon  for a video CD
- ② Icon  for a video DVD
- ③ Icon  for an audio DVD
- ④ Icon  for an audio CD
- ⑤ Icon  for an MP3 CD
- ⑥ DISC main menu with list of discs
- ⑦ Play icon  for the disc currently playing

▶ **To play a disc:** Select a video DVD in the DISC main menu ⑥.

Selecting using the steering wheel

▶ Press and hold the **▼** or **▲** button.

The system will play the previous or next disc, depending on the button pressed.

i The previous or next disc may also be an audio disc or a video CD, depending on how the magazine compartments are loaded.

Selecting chapters

i If a film contains chapters, you can use the chapter list or the chapter skip function to select a chapter for playback.

Chapter list

This function is described in the section "Native DVD menu", see page 101.

DISC mode

Video DVD playback

Skipping chapters forward/back

i These two functions are also available in the on-screen menu, see the section “Skipping chapters forward/back” on page 107.

- ▶ Briefly press the **▲** or **▼** button on the steering wheel.

The system will execute the chapter skip corresponding to the button pressed.

Title list

This function is described in the section “Native DVD menu”, see page 101.

Subtitle

This function is described in the section “Native DVD menu”, see page 101.

Audio track

This function is described in the section “Native DVD menu”, see page 101.

Viewing angle

This function is described in the section “Native DVD menu”, see page 101.

Audio settings

Please see the section “Audio settings” on page 33 for a description of the audio settings.

Video settings

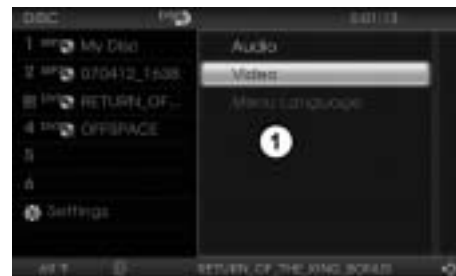
Open the Video Settings menu

- ▶ During video playback, press and hold the **BACK** button until the DISC main menu appears.



- ▶ In the DISC main menu, select the menu item Settings.

A selection menu appears.



- ① Selection menu

- ▶ In the selection menu, select the menu item Video.

The Video Settings menu appears.



- ① Video settings menu

The Video Settings menu includes the following functions:

- ◆ Aspect ratio, see page 99
- ◆ Brightness, color and contrast, see page 99
- ◆ Video reset, see page 100

Close the Video Settings menu

- ▶ Briefly press the **BACK** button.

Aspect ratio

- ▶ Open the Video settings menu, see section “Open the Video Settings menu” on page 98.



① Video settings menu

- ▶ **To open the Aspect Ratio menu:** In the Video Settings menu, select the menu item Aspect Ratio.

The Aspect Ratio menu appears.



① Icon  for currently active setting

- ▶ **To set the aspect ratio:** Select the desired setting.

Brightness, color and contrast

- ▶ Open the Video settings menu, see section “Open the Video Settings menu” on page 98.



① Video settings menu

- ▶ **To open the desired menu:** In the Video Settings menu, select either the menu item Brightness, Color or Contrast.

The corresponding menu appears.



The illustration shows the brightness setting

- ① Scale for the brightness setting
- ② Indicator

DISC mode

Video DVD playback

The position of the indicator ② on the scale ① shows the current setting.

- ▶ Turn **[Left/Right]** the controller ③ until the desired setting is reached.

The system saves this setting automatically.

- ▶ **To close the menu:** Press the controller ④.

or

- ▶ Briefly press the **BACK** or **DISC/AUX** button.

Video reset

You can use the video reset function to reset the following settings to their factory settings:

- ◆ Aspect ratio
- ◆ Brightness
- ◆ Color
- ◆ Contrast
- ▶ Open the Video settings menu, see section “Open the Video Settings menu” on page 98.



① Video settings menu

- ▶ **To open the Video Reset menu:** In the Video Settings menu, select the menu item Reset Video Settings.

You will be prompted to confirm that you wish to reset the video settings.



- ▶ Select Yes or No.

The system will or will not reset the video settings, depending on the answer you select.

Language settings

- i** After starting DVD playback, some DVDs will show a language menu. In this language menu a specific language is marked by default, it depends on the DVD content. With the language settings you can set a different language which should be marked in the language menu as default in future. If the DVD does not contain that different language, the DVD depending language is marked by default.

This setting is applied only when a DVD is inserted, changing this setting during playback does not have an effect.

- ▶ **To open the Language Settings menu:** During video playback, press and hold the **BACK** button until the DISC main menu appears.

- ▶ Select the menu item Settings.

A selection menu appears.

Video DVD playback



① Selection menu

- ▶ In the selection menu, select the menu item Menu Language.

The Language menu appears.

① Icon  for currently active setting

- ▶ **To change the language:** Select the desired language.

Native DVD menu



① Native DVD menu

The native DVD menu includes the following functions:

- ◆ Closing the native DVD menu and returning to video full-screen display, see page 102
- ◆ DVD top menu/DVD menu, see page 102
- ◆ Chapter list, see page 102
- ◆ Title list, see page 103

- ◆ Subtitle, see page 103
- ◆ Audio track, see page 104
- ◆ Viewing angle, see page 104

i Depending on the content of the DVD currently playing, certain menu items may have no function even though they are displayed.

Opening the native DVD menu

i This function is also available in the on-screen menu, see the section “Opening the native DVD menu” on page 105.

- ▶ During video playback, briefly press the **BACK** button.

The native DVD menu appears (video playback continues invisibly in the background).



① Native DVD menu

DISC mode

Video DVD playback

Closing the native DVD menu and returning to video full-screen display

- ▶ **Option 1:** In the native DVD menu, select the menu item Return to Screen.
- ▶ **Option 2:** Press the **BACK** button.

DVD top menu/DVD menu

i The DVD top menu or DVD menu is stored on the DVD itself. The content, structure and language of the menus as well as the available menu items will vary depending on the DVD.

You can also set the menu language in the language settings, see page 100.

- ▶ Open the native DVD menu, see section “Opening the native DVD menu” on page 101.



① Native DVD menu

- ▶ **To open the desired menu:** In the native DVD menu, select the menu item DVD Top Menu or DVD Menu.

The relevant menu appears as a full-screen display.



① Menu items

- ▶ **To highlight a menu item:** Turn or push the controller .
- ▶ **To confirm the highlighted menu item:** Press the controller .
- ▶ **To exit the menu:** Highlight the corresponding menu item and confirm.

Chapter list

i You can select a specific chapter for playback directly in the chapter list.

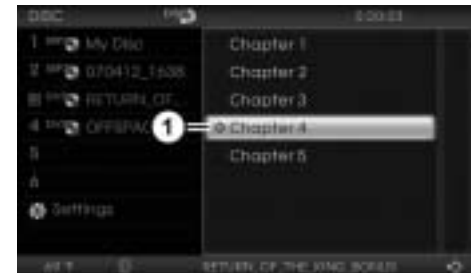
- ▶ Open the native DVD menu, see section “Opening the native DVD menu” on page 101.



① Native DVD menu

- ▶ **To call up the chapter list:** In the native DVD menu, select the menu item Chapter List.

The chapter list appears.



① Chapter currently playing (icon)

- ▶ **To play a chapter:** Select the desired chapter.

Title list

- i** If a DVD contains several titles or films, you can select a specific title or film for playback directly in the title list.
- ▶ Open the native DVD menu, see section “Opening the native DVD menu” on page 101.



① Native DVD menu

- ▶ **To call up the title list:** In the native DVD menu, select the menu item Title List.

The title list appears.



① Play icon ♦ for title currently playing

- ▶ **To select a title or film:** Select the desired title or film.

Subtitle

- i** If a DVD contains subtitles, you can switch them on or off in the Subtitle menu. The number and language of the subtitles will vary depending on the DVD.
- ▶ Open the native DVD menu, see page 101.



① Native DVD menu

- ▶ **To open the Subtitle menu:** In the native DVD menu, select the menu item Subtitle.

The Subtitle menu appears.



① Icon ♦ for currently active setting

- ▶ **To switch subtitles on:** Select the desired subtitles.

DISC mode

Video DVD playback

- ▶ **To switch subtitles off:** Select the respective menu item.

Audio track

i If a DVD contains several audio tracks, you can switch between them in the Audio Track menu. The number and languages of the audio tracks will vary depending on the DVD.

- ▶ Open the native DVD menu, see page 101.



① Native DVD menu

- ▶ **To open the Audio Track menu:** In the native DVD menu, select the menu item Audio Track.

The Audio Track menu appears.



① Icon ♦ for currently active setting

- ▶ **To switch audio track:** Select the desired audio track.

Viewing angle

i If a title or film contains several viewing angles (camera angles), you can switch between them in the Angle menu. The number of viewing angles will vary depending on the DVD.

- ▶ Open the native DVD menu, see section “Opening the native DVD menu” on page 101.



① Native DVD menu

- ▶ **To open the Angle menu:** In the native DVD menu, select the menu item Angle.

The Angle menu appears.

- ▶ **To switch viewing angle:** Select the desired viewing angle.

On-screen menu

You can call up the following in the on-screen menu:

- ◆ The native DVD menu, see page 105.
- ◆ The chapter list, see page 106.


In addition you can control the following playback functions:

- ◆ Pausing or resuming playback, see page 106
- ◆ Skipping chapters forward/back, see page 107
- ◆ Fast forwarding/reversing, see page 107

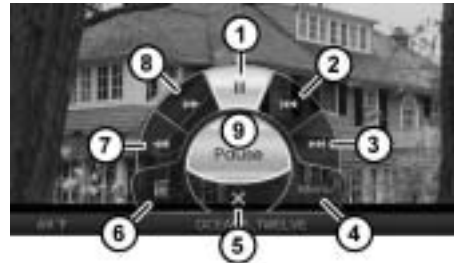
Depending on the content of the DVD currently playing, certain menu items may have no function even though they are displayed.

Opening the on-screen menu

i You cannot open the on-screen menu if the DVD top menu or DVD menu stored on the DVD is open.

- ▶ During video playback, press the controller .

The on-screen menu will be shown over the video currently playing.



- ① Pause/resume playback
- ② Skip chapter back
- ③ Skip chapter forward
- ④ Open the native DVD menu
- ⑤ Close the on-screen menu
- ⑥ Call up the chapter list
- ⑦ Fast reverse
- ⑧ Fast forward
- ⑨ Shows the selected menu item ① - ⑧

Closing the on-screen menu

- ▶ **Option 1:** In the on-screen menu, select the menu item ⑤.
- ▶ **Option 2:** Briefly press the **BACK** button.
- ▶ **Option 3:** Do nothing and wait until the on-screen menu is automatically closed.

Opening the native DVD menu

i This function is also available outside the on-screen menu, see the section “Opening the native DVD menu” on page 101.

- ▶ Open the on-screen menu, see section “Opening the on-screen menu” on page 105.



- ① On-screen menu
- ② Menu item

DISC mode

Video DVD playback

- ▶ **To open the native DVD menu:** In the on-screen menu ①, select the menu item ②.

The native DVD menu will be shown over the video currently playing.



Please see the section “Native DVD menu” on page 101 for a description of the menu functions.

- i** The menu item Return to Screen described on page 101 is not part of the native DVD menu displayed on-screen over the video currently playing.

- ▶ **To close the native DVD menu:** Briefly press the **BACK** button or do nothing and wait until the menu is automatically closed.

Calling up the chapter list

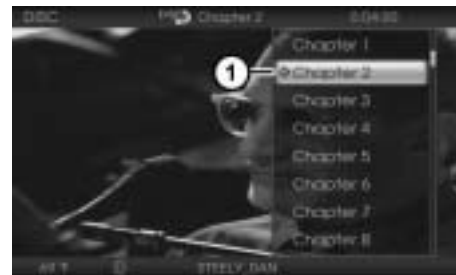
- ▶ Open the on-screen menu, see section “Opening the on-screen menu” on page 105.



- ① Menu item
- ② On-screen menu

- ▶ **To call up the chapter list:** In the on-screen menu ②, select the menu item ①.

The chapter list will be shown over the video currently playing.



- ① Chapter currently playing (icon ♦)

- ▶ **To play a chapter:** Select the desired chapter from the chapter list.

Pausing or resuming playback

- ▶ Open the on-screen menu, see section “Opening the on-screen menu” on page 105.



- ① Menu item
- ② On-screen menu

Video DVD playback

- ▶ **To pause or resume playback:** In the on-screen menu ②, select the menu item ①.

The system will pause or resume playback, depending on the previous status.

Skipping chapters forward/back

- ▶ **i** These two functions are also available on the steering wheel, see the section “Skipping chapters forward/back” on page 98.
- ▶ Open the on-screen menu, see section “Opening the on-screen menu” on page 105.



- ① On-screen menu
- ② Skipping chapters back
- ③ Skipping chapters forward

- ▶ **To skip chapters:** In the on-screen menu ①, select the menu item ② or ③.

The system will execute the chapter skip corresponding to the menu item selected.

Fast forwarding/reversing

- ▶ Open the on-screen menu, see section “Opening the on-screen menu” on page 105.



- ① Fast reversing
- ② Fast forwarding
- ③ On-screen menu

- ▶ **To start fast forwarding/reversing:** In the on-screen menu ③, select the menu item ① or ② and press and hold the controller Ⓞ.

The system will start fast forwarding or fast reversing depending on the selection. The sound is muted during this.

- ▶ **To terminate fast forwarding/reversing:** Release the controller Ⓞ.


DISC mode

Video CD playback

i For information on general system operation, please refer to the chapter “Functional introduction” from page 17.

Functional restrictions

It may be the case that some functions or actions may not be possible at certain times, or may not be possible in general, depending on the video CD.

When such functions or actions are activated, they are indicated by the icon  in the display.






① Icon 


Notes on PBC (PlayBack Control)

- ◆ PBC is a feature that allows users to navigate the content of a VCD (in MPEG1 version 2.0 VCD) with one or more interactive menus.
- ◆ PBC feature only works with VCD version 2.0.
- ◆ PBC feature may have different behavior depending on how the VCD was developed.

Switching to DISC mode and playing discs

- ▶ **Option 1:** Load the magazine with an appropriate disc, see the section “Loading the disc changer magazine” from page 79.
- ▶ **Option 2:** Press the  button. The system will switch to either DISC or AUX mode. If the system switches to AUX mode:
 - ▶ Press the  button again.

- ▶ **Option 3:** Press the  button on the steering wheel repeatedly until the system switches to DISC mode.

i If Navigation, INFO or PHONE is the active mode, switching to DISC mode on the steering wheel does not switch the display, only the audio source will be switched accordingly. If you want to switch the display also, you must use the  button on the control panel.

After switching to DISC mode, the system will resume playing the last disc played if available, otherwise it will play the next available disc.

If it is an audio disc, please select a video CD in the DISC main menu, see the section “Selecting and playing discs” on page 87.

If it is a video DVD, please select a video CD in the DISC main menu, see the section “DISC main menu” on page 96.

If the magazine is empty, the message No playable disc available appears. If this happens, load the magazine with an appropriate disc, see the section “Loading the disc changer magazine” from page 79.

After video playback starts, the system will show the video content as a full-screen display. You will see either the film or the PBC (Playback Control) menu stored on the video CD.

What you see depends on the video CD itself and also on whether the display of the PBC menu is switched on or off.

You can switch the display of the PBC menu on or off in the native video CD menu, see page 111.

You can open the following menus during playback:



- ◆ DISC main menu, see page 96
- ◆ Native video CD menu, see page 111
- ◆ On-screen menu, see page 114

DISC main menu

Opening the DISC main menu

- ▶ During video playback, press and hold the **BACK** button until the DISC main menu appears.



- ① Currently active main function
- ② DISC main menu with list of discs
- ③ Currently active entertainment source
- ④ Track currently playing
- ⑤ Content area with native video CD menu
- ⑥ Name of the disc currently playing
- ⑦ Open the Settings menu
- ⑧ Disc currently playing
- ⑨ Icon  for a video CD
- ⑩ Play  icon for the disc currently playing

- i** Video playback continues in the background when the DISC main menu is open.

Closing the DISC main menu and returning to video playback

- ▶ **Option 1:** In the content area ⑤ with the native video CD menu select the menu item Return to Screen.
- ▶ **Option 2:** Press the **BACK** button.

Displaying the disc name

The list of discs in the DISC main menu ② shows the discs available in the magazine by their names, provided the names are stored on the discs. If there are no names stored, the respective disc type will be displayed.


If a video CD is highlighted in the list of discs in the DISC main menu ②, then the content area ⑤ will display the native video CD menu.

Unknown discs

Discs that have not yet been played after the magazine has been loaded are not known to the system. They are displayed as follows.

Video CD playback



- ① Icon  for an unknown disc
- ② Display for the unknown content of the unknown disc

As soon as an unknown disc is played, display takes place as previously described in the section “Displaying the disc name”, see page 109.







The system does not store the data, therefore after a disc is removed from the magazine and reinserted at a later date, it may be unknown to the system once more.

Selecting and playing discs

Selecting using the central control panel



- ▶ **To open the DISC main menu:** During video playback, press and hold the **BACK** button until the DISC main menu appears.



- ① Icon  for a video CD
- ② Icon  for a video DVD
- ③ Icon  for an audio DVD
- ④ Icon  for an audio CD
- ⑤ Icon  for an MP3 CD
- ⑥ DISC main menu with list of discs
- ⑦ Play icon  for the disc currently playing

- ▶ **To play a disc:** Select a video CD in the DISC main menu ⑥.

Selecting using the steering wheel

- ▶ Press and hold the  or  button.
The system will play the previous or next disc, depending on the button pressed.

- i** The previous or next disc may also be an audio disc or a video DVD, depending on how the magazine compartments are loaded.

Selecting tracks

If a video CD contains several tracks, you can use the track list or the track skip function to select a track for playback.

Track list

- i** You can select a specific track for playback directly in the track list.

This function is described in the section “Native video CD menu”, see page 111.

Skipping tracks forward/back

i “Skip track forward” skips to the next track. “Skip track back” skips to the beginning of the current track, if the track has been playing for more than 10 seconds. If the track has been playing for less than 10 seconds, it will skip to the beginning of the previous track.

i These two functions are also available in the following menus:

- ◆ PBC menu, see page 112
 - ◆ On-screen menu, see page 114
- ▶ Briefly press the **▲** or **▼** button on the steering wheel.
- The system will execute the track skip corresponding to the button pressed.

Video settings

Please see the section “Video settings” on page 98 for a description of the video settings.

Audio settings

Please see the section “Audio settings” on page 33 for a description of the audio settings.

Native video CD menu



① Native video CD menu

The native video CD menu includes the following functions:

- ◆ Closing the native video CD menu and returning to video playback, see page 111
- ◆ Switching the display of the PBC (Playback Control) menu on/off, see page 112
- ◆ PBC menu, see page 112
- ◆ Track list, see page 113

i Depending on the content of the video CD currently playing, certain menu items may have no function even though they are displayed.

Opening the native video CD menu

i This function is also available in the on-screen menu, see the section “Opening the native video CD menu” on page 115.

- ▶ During video playback, briefly press the **BACK** button.

The native video CD menu appears (video playback continues in the background).

Closing the native video CD menu and returning to video playback

- ▶ **Option 1:** In the native video CD menu, select the menu item Return to Screen.
- ▶ **Option 2:** Press the **BACK** button.

After choosing an option, you will see either the film or the PBC (Playback Control) menu stored on the video CD. What you see depends on the video CD itself and also on whether the display of the PBC menu is switched on or off. A description of how to switch the display on/off appears below.

Video CD playback

Switching the display of the PBC (Playback Control) menu on/off

- ▶ Open the native video CD menu, see section “Opening the native video CD menu” on page 111.



① Native video CD menu

- ▶ In the native video CD menu, select the menu item PBC on.



- ① Status display
- ② Menu item PBC on
- ③ Native video CD menu

Depending on the previous status, the display of the menu will be switched on or off. The status display ① changes accordingly.

- ◆ Display = function switched on
- ◆ Display = function switched off

- i** When the display of the PBC menu is switched on, PBC appears on the right in the top status line.

The display of the PBC menu is automatically switched off as soon as you play another disc.

PBC menu

- i** The PBC menu is stored on the video CD itself. The individual tracks on the video CD are accessed via the PBC menu. The content and structure of the menu as well as the available menu items will vary depending on the video CD.

Opening the PBC menu

- i** This function is also available in the on-screen menu, see the section “Opening the PBC menu or calling up the track list” on page 116.

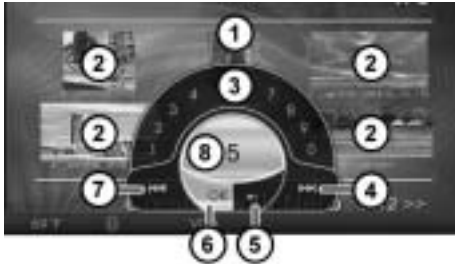
- ▶ Open the native video CD menu, see section “Opening the native video CD menu” on page 111.



① Native video CD menu

- ▶ **To open the PBC menu:** In the native video CD menu, select the menu item PBC Menu.

You will see the PBC menu in full-screen mode and the speller.



- ① PBC menu
- ② Individual tracks
- ③ Speller
- ④ Change to the next PBC page
- ⑤ Delete entered track number
- ⑥ Menu item OK
- ⑦ Change to the previous PBC page
- ⑧ Shows the selected speller menu item

The individual tracks are numbered in the PBC menu ①.

The speller ③ provides the following functions:

- ◆ Entering a track number from 0 to 99
- ◆ Skipping tracks or changing the PBC menu page

Entering track numbers

- ▶ **Single-digit track number:** In the speller, highlight the desired digit by turning the controller and press the controller .
- ▶ **Two-digit track number:** In the speller, highlight the first digit by turning the controller and press the controller , then highlight the second digit and again press the controller .

i After you enter the second digit, the menu item OK is automatically highlighted. You can now confirm or clear the entry.

- ▶ **To completely clear an entry:** In the speller, select the menu item ⑤ . You can then enter a new number.

- ▶ **To confirm an entry:** In the speller, select the menu item OK.

If the entry is not valid, you can enter a new number after a short time. If the entry is valid, the PBC menu is automatically closed and the corresponding track started.

Changing the PBC menu page

- ▶ **To change to the next PBC menu page:** In the speller, select the menu item ④.
- ▶ **To change to the previous PBC menu page:** In the speller, select the menu item ⑦.

Back to the native video CD menu

- ▶ Briefly press the **BACK** button.

Track list

i This function is also available in the on-screen menu, see the section “Opening the PBC menu or calling up the track list” on page 116.

If a video CD contains several tracks, you can use the track list to directly select a specific track for playback.

DISC mode

Video CD playback

- ▶ Open the native video CD menu, see section “Opening the native video CD menu” on page 111.



① Native video CD menu

- ▶ **To call up the track list:** In the native video CD menu, select the menu item Track List.

The track list appears.



① Play icon ♦ for the track currently playing

② Track list

- ▶ **To play a track:** Select the desired track.

On-screen menu

You can call up the following in the on-screen menu:

- ♦ The native video CD menu, see page 115.
- ♦ Either the PBC menu or the track list, see page 116.

In addition you can control the following playback functions:

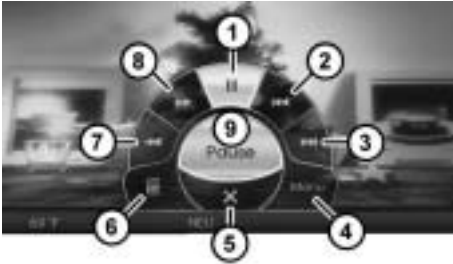
- ♦ Pausing or resuming playback, see page 106
- ♦ Skipping tracks forward/back, see page 116
- ♦ Fast forwarding/reversing, see page 117

Depending on the content of the video CD currently playing, certain menu items may have no function even though they are displayed.

Opening the on-screen menu

- ▶ During video playback, press the controller Ⓞ.

The on-screen menu will be shown over the video currently playing.



- ① Pause/resume playback
- ② Skip track back
- ③ Skip track forward
- ④ Open the native video CD menu
- ⑤ Close the on-screen menu
- ⑥ Open the PBC menu or call up the track list
- ⑦ Fast reverse
- ⑧ Fast forward
- ⑨ Shows the selected menu item ① - ⑧

Closing the on-screen menu

- ▶ **Option 1:** In the on-screen menu, select the menu item ⑤ .
- ▶ **Option 2:** Briefly press the **BACK** button.

- ▶ **Option 3:** Do nothing and wait until the on-screen menu is automatically closed.

Opening the native video CD menu

- i** This function is also available outside the on-screen menu, see the section “Opening the native video CD menu” on page 111.
- ▶ Open the on-screen menu, see section “Opening the on-screen menu” on page 114.



- ① On-screen menu
- ② Menu item

- ▶ **To open the native video CD menu:**
In the on-screen menu ①, select the menu item ②.
The native video CD menu will be shown over the video currently playing.



Please see page 111 for a description of the native video CD menu.

- i** The menu item Return to Screen described on page page 111 is not part of the native CD menu displayed on-screen over the video currently playing.
- ▶ **To close the native video CD menu:**
Briefly press the **BACK** button or do nothing and wait until the menu is automatically closed.

Video CD playback

Opening the PBC menu or calling up the track list

- i** These two functions are also available outside the on-screen menu, see the section “Opening the PBC menu” on page 112 or the section “Track list” on page 113.
- To open the PBC menu, the display of the PBC menu must be switched on in the native video CD menu, see the section “Native video CD menu” on page 111. To call up the track list, the display of the PBC menu must be switched off there.
- ▶ Open the on-screen menu, see section “Opening the on-screen menu” on page 114.



- ① Menu item
- ② On-screen menu

- ▶ In the on-screen menu ②, select the menu item ①.

Either the PBC menu or the track list will be shown over the video currently playing, depending on whether the display of the PBC menu is switched on or off.

Please see page 112 for a description of the PBC menu.

- ▶ **To play a track:** Select the desired track in the track list.

Pausing or resuming playback

- ▶ Open the on-screen menu, see section “Opening the on-screen menu” on page 114.



- ① Menu item
- ② On-screen menu

- ▶ **To pause or resume playback:** In the on-screen menu ②, select the menu item ①.

The system will pause or resume playback, depending on the previous status.

Skipping tracks forward/back

- i** These two functions are also available outside the on-screen menu:

- ◆ on the steering wheel, see page 111
 - ◆ in the PBC menu, see page 112
- ▶ Open the on-screen menu, see section “Opening the on-screen menu” on page 114.



- ① On-screen menu
- ② Skipping tracks back
- ③ Skipping tracks forward

- ▶ In the on-screen menu, select the menu item ② or ③.

The system will execute the track skip corresponding to the menu item selected.

Fast forwarding/reversing

- ▶ Open the on-screen menu, see section “Opening the on-screen menu” on page 114.



- ① Fast reversing
- ② Fast forwarding
- ③ On-screen menu

- ▶ **To start fast forwarding/reversing:** In the on-screen menu, select the menu item ⑧ or ⑦ and press and hold the controller ④.

The system will start fast forwarding or fast reversing depending on the selection. The sound is muted during this.

- ▶ **To terminate fast forwarding/reversing:** Release the controller ④.

DISC mode

Video CD playback

General information	120
Signal sources	121
iPod® playback	129
USB playback	136
AUX playback	143

General information

Trademarks

iPod® and iPhone™ are trademarks of Apple Inc.

Note on copyright

The audio files that you can create to store on an iPod® mobile digital device or a USB memory stick or that you can play using the iPod® mobile digital device or from the USB memory stick are generally copyright-protected under applicable international and national laws.

In many countries, the reproduction of copyrighted material is not permitted, even if only for personal use, without the express prior consent of the copyright holder.

Please check the current copyright laws for your country and comply with them.

These restrictions do not apply, for example, to your own compositions and recordings, or to recordings for which authorization has been obtained from the copyright holder.

Supported signal sources

You can connect the following signal sources to the Driver Information System:

- ◆ 3rd to 5th generation iPod®
- ◆ iPod® Mini
- ◆ USB memory stick containing audio files
- ◆ AUX signal source (commercially available audio/video signal source)

i The system can only access the audio files on an iPod® mobile digital device. Picture or video files cannot be accessed.

i It is possible to connect an iPhone™ mobile digital device to the system via **Bluetooth® wireless technology** to use the system as a hands-free unit. The system does not support the music playback interface (e.g. play list) of the iPhone™ mobile digital device.

Notes on USB memory sticks

- ◆ Only use USB memory sticks of well-known manufacturers. The use of other USB memory sticks may result in malfunction of the system.

- i** In rare cases it is possible that an USB memory stick is not recognized by the system or may cause a malfunction. This is not a fault. Some USB memory sticks do not comply with the USB specifications.
- ◆ Due to the constant changes of USB products in the market and their respective software, it can be possible that some of the USB memory sticks are not compatible with the system.
- ◆ Files that are not a standard MP3 or WMA file may not be playable.
- ◆ Encrypted USB memory sticks cannot be recognized by the system.
- ◆ Depending on the state of the USB memory stick, it may not be recognized by the system upon connection.
- ◆ USB memory sticks whose Byte/Sector is not 512Byte or 2048Byte is not supported.
- ◆ Some USB memory sticks may not operate in the vehicle due to compatibility issues. Please check that it is compatible with the system in the vehicle before usage.

Permissible file systems

The following file systems are permitted:

- ◆ FAT12
- ◆ FAT16
- ◆ FAT32

File names and folder names

When storing audio files on the USB stick, you can organize the files into folders.

Names must be assigned for the files as well as for the folders.

The Driver Information System uses these names for the corresponding display during playback.

Empty folders or folders containing data other than audio files in the supported playback formats are not displayed by the system.

i The Driver Information System does not support ID3 tags.

Signal sources

Please note the following when assigning file names:

- ◆ File names must contain at least one character. They should not contain more than one hundred characters as the system cannot display names exceeding one hundred characters.
- ◆ File names must have the following extensions:
 - ◆ MP3 files: mp3
 - ◆ WMA files: wma
- ◆ A period must appear between the file name and the extension.

Example of a correct MP3 file name:
Track 1.mp3

The system will not recognize the audio files if there is no period between the file name and the extension or if the extension is missing.

Supported playback formats

i Audio files with Digital Rights Management (DRM) are not supported.

The Driver Information System supports the playback of audio files in the following formats:

- ◆ MPEG1 Audio Layer 3
- i** In everyday speech, this format has been replaced by the designation “MP3”.
- ◆ WMA

Supported bit and sampling rates

- ◆ MP3 files:
 - ◆ Fixed and variable bit rates from 8 kbps to 320 kbps
 - ◆ Sampling rates up to 48 kHz
- ◆ WMA files:
 - ◆ Fixed and variable bit rates from 8 kbps to 320 kbps
 - ◆ Sampling rates up to 48 kHz

i Only use audio files with a bit rate of 128 kbps or higher and with a sampling rate of 44.1 kHz or higher. Lower rates may result in audibly impaired quality. This is particularly true if the surround function is activated.

Notes on AUX signal sources

i It is possible that noise is heard during playback when using an AUX signal source. This is not a malfunction but system-related. We recommend using the line-out of the AUX signal source instead of the power outlet (headphone or loudspeaker). If the sound is distorted and no line-out is available, reduce the volume level on the AUX signal source itself.

Connecting signal sources

WARNING

If you connect and disconnect signal sources when driving, you may be distracted from the traffic situation, thus increasing the accident hazard.

Only connect and disconnect signal sources when the vehicle is stationary.

General information

- ◆ If you connect an iPod® mobile digital device, you cannot connect any other signal sources.
- ◆ If you connect a USB memory stick and/or AUX signal source, you cannot connect an iPod® mobile digital device.

Connecting sockets

A USB socket (labeled with “USB”) and a 3.5 mm (0.14”) jack socket (labeled with “AUX”) are provided for connecting signal sources.

CAUTION


Please be careful that the USB socket is not touched physically by any object. The system may be damaged.



- ① 3,5 mm (0.14”) jack socket
- ② USB socket

-  Connecting an iPod® mobile digital device uses both sockets at the same time.

Notes on connecting an USB memory stick

-  The system supports USB memory sticks containing audio files. Any other USB devices or anything else than music playback is not supported.

Please pay attention to the following when connecting an USB memory stick.

CAUTION

Any other USB devices such as hard discs or other digital equipment may damage the system as a result of excessive power consumption.

When connecting and disconnecting a USB memory stick many times in a short time, the system may be damaged.

(continued)

Signal sources



CAUTION

(continued)

Using the system's USB interface to charge, heat or connect any other USB devices except USB memory sticks may decrease the system performance or may damage the system.

When the USB memory stick is connected to the system when starting the vehicle, the USB memory stick may be damaged. USB memory sticks should be disconnected to the system when starting the vehicle.

- ◆ When connecting or disconnecting the USB memory stick, please be careful of the static electricity.
- ◆ Noise may occur when connecting an USB memory stick.
- ◆ The time required to analyze a connected USB memory stick may vary depending on the stick, stick capacity, or the file structure of the stick. This does not mean that the system is malfunctioning, so please wait.
- ◆ The system's USB support shall not be used for anything else then music playback.
- ◆ A USB hub or extension cable may prevent the system from properly analyzing the USB memory stick. Please connect the USB memory stick directly to system.
- ◆ High capacity USB memory sticks may be divided into more than one logical drives. In this case, only the content of the top logical drive is analyzed. Therefore, please place the files to be played in the top logical drive of the USB memory stick.
- ◆ Some USB memory sticks use a separate application to store files into the stick. This is treated in the same way as the previous case.
- ◆ Connection of MP3 player, mobile phone, digital camera, or any other devices that can be connected to a USB port that are not recognized as Removable Disk may not operate properly.
- ◆ Any other USB memory stick than the standard Metal Cover Type is not guaranteed to operate properly.
- ◆ Operation of HDD type, CF, and SD Memory is not guaranteed.
- ◆ USB memory sticks acting as an adapter such as for SD type and CF type may not be recognized by the system.
- ◆ USB memories whose connector part causes connection failure due to USB HDD or physical design of the device connector are not guaranteed to work. (e.g. i-stick type).

Notes on connecting an iPod® mobile digital device

Please pay attention to the following when connecting an iPod®:

- ◆ To connect an iPod® you will need an appropriate connecting cable. You can buy this as original accessory at your Hyundai dealer. Connector cable for PC provided by Apple or other manufacturers may not operate properly and may cause malfunction.
- ◆ The connecting cable available as original accessory at your Hyundai dealer simultaneously occupies the USB socket and the AUX socket.
- ◆ When connecting the iPod® cable, push the cable connector fully so that the signal is not disrupted.

Signal sources

- ◆ Connection of the iPod® connection cable without the iPod® connected at the other end will still trigger the system to change to AUX mode. In such case, noise may occur due to an open end connection. Please disconnect and store the iPod® connector cable in a safe place when iPod® is not in use.
- ◆ If the Hyundai logo persists on the iPod® display when disconnecting the iPod® from the system, please upgrade to the latest iPod® firmware.
- ◆ Connection of the AUX connection cable without the AUX signal source connected at the other end will still trigger the system to change to AUX mode. In such case, noise may occur due to an open end connection. Please disconnect and store the AUX connection cable in a safe place when the AUX signal source is not in use.
- ◆ When the power of the AUX signal source is connected to the vehicle's power jack, noise may occur on the display with some devices. In this case, disconnect from the power jack and use the internal power source of the device.

Notes on connecting an AUX signal source

- ◆ You can connect an audio or video signal source to the AUX socket using a commercially available cable with a 3.5 mm (0.14") jack.
- ◆ AUX operates properly only when the external audio or video signal source connected is operational.

After connecting an iPod® mobile digital device or an USB memory stick

If PHONE, INFO or Navigation mode is displayed before connecting the signal source, the display does not switch to AUX mode automatically. But AUX is automatically the active audio source and playback of the respective signal source starts if it contains playable files.

If DISC, FM/AM or XM® Satellite Radio mode is displayed before connecting the signal source, the display switches automatically to AUX mode. AUX is automatically the active audio source and playback of the respective signal source starts if it contains playable files.

After connecting an AUX audio signal source

If PHONE, INFO or Navigation mode is displayed before connecting an AUX audio signal source, the display does not switch to AUX mode automatically. But AUX is automatically the active audio source and playback starts as soon as the signal source transmits an audio signal.

If DISC, FM/AM or XM® Satellite Radio mode is displayed before connecting the AUX audio signal source, the display switches automatically to AUX mode. AUX is automatically the active audio source and playback starts as soon as the signal source transmits an audio signal.

AUX mode

Signal sources

After connecting an AUX video signal source

Independent of the displayed mode before connecting an AUX video signal source, the display switches automatically to AUX mode as soon as the signal source transmits a video signal.

AUX is automatically the active audio source, as soon as an AUX video signal source is connected. It does not matter whether the signal source transmits an audio signal or not.

i For information on general system operation, please refer to the chapter “Functional introduction” from page 17.

Switching to AUX mode

► **Option 1:** Connect a signal source to the system, see the section “Signal sources” on page 121.

i This option works if you are connecting an iPod® mobile digital device, a USB memory stick or an AUX audio/video signal source.

If you are connecting an iPod® mobile digital device, playback of the currently active track in the iPod® will be continued.

If you are connecting a USB memory stick and it contains playable files, USB playback will be started.

If you are connecting an AUX signal source, you will hear or see the signal source, on condition that playback has been started on the signal source itself.

► **Option 2:** Press the **DISC/AUX** button.

The system will switch to either AUX or DISC mode.

If the system switches to DISC mode:

► Press the **DISC/AUX** button again.

► **Option 3:** Press the **MODE** button on the steering wheel repeatedly until the system switches to AUX mode.

i If Navigation, INFO or PHONE is the active mode, switching to AUX mode on the steering wheel does not switch the display accordingly. If you want to switch the display also, you must use the **DISC/AUX** button on the control panel.

After choosing option 2 or 3, you will hear or see the last active signal source if the following conditions are met:

- ◆ The signal source is still connected.
- ◆ The signal source contains playable files.
- ◆ Playback has been started on the signal source itself (AUX signal source only).

Opening the AUX main menu

► **From iPod® or USB playback:** Press and hold the **BACK** button.

► **From AUX video playback:** Press the **BACK** button.

In both cases, the AUX main menu appears.



This sample illustration shows the AUX main menu during USB playback

- ① AUX main menu with the available signal sources
- ② AUX content area

AUX mode

General operation

Selecting a signal source

- i** You can only select a signal source if both signal sources, USB memory stick and AUX signal source, are connected at the same time. If an iPod® mobile digital device is connected you cannot connect an other signal source. In this case, selecting a signal source is not possible.
- Open the AUX main menu, see section “Opening the AUX main menu” on page 127.

- Select the desired signal source in the AUX main menu.
- The system will switch to the selected signal source.



This sample illustration shows the AUX main menu during USB playback

- ① AUX main menu with the available signal sources

i For information on general system operation, please refer to the chapter “Functional introduction” from page 17.

i Accessing iPod® main/submenu items and tracks can be delayed depending on file names and sizes.

Starting playback

i The iPod® searching process can be different depending on iPod® models. The actual order of playback of iPod® content on the system may be different from actual iPod®.

i When iPod® itself shuts down due to an internal failure, please use iPod® after making a reset (refer to iPod® operation manual).


► **Option 1:** Switch to AUX mode and, if necessary, open the AUX main menu and select the iPod® mobile digital device as the signal source, see section “General operation” from page 127.

► **Option 2:** Connect an iPod® mobile digital device, see the section “Connecting signal sources” on page 123.

In both cases, playback of the currently active track in the iPod® will be continued.

i The position of the active track in the iPod® structure is unknown to the system after the iPod® has been just connected or after the system was switched off and on with iPod® still connected.


Due to the unknown position, the following points are valid:

- ◆ In the Options menu, the menu item Now Playing has no function.
- ◆ The system will display the iPod® menu in the content area, instead of the track list with the track currently playing as described below.
- ◆ The top category of the track currently playing will not be shown in the lower statusline as described below.
- ◆ If you navigate through the iPod® menu, the track currently playing will not be marked with the play icon  as described below.

i As soon as you select another track, the position of that track in the iPod® structure is known to the system and the points described above are no longer valid.

AUX main menu during iPod® playback



- ① Currently active main function
- ② AUX main menu with list of signal sources
- ③ Currently active entertainment source
- ④ Track currently playing
- ⑤ Content area with track list
- ⑥ Top category of the track currently playing
- ⑦ Play icon  for the track currently playing

AUX mode

iPod playback

iPod® menu

i The iPod® menu is nearly the same as the “MUSIC” menu on the iPod® itself. The Driver Information System cannot access any of the other iPod® menus.

Opening the iPod® menu

▶ **To activate the content area:** Push ◀ ▶ the controller (⊙) until the content area is active.

You can tell the active content area by the blue frame around it.



- ① Blue frame
- ② Content area

▶ With the content area active, press the **BACK** button repeatedly until the iPod® menu appears.

i The iPod® searching process can be different depending on iPod® models.

The iPod® menu has eight main menu items in total, each of which contains at least one submenu item, see the following list.



① iPod® menu

Main menu item	Submenu items
Playlists	> List of Playlists > List of Tracks
Artists	> List of Artists > List of Albums > List of Tracks
Albums	> List of Albums > List of Tracks
Songs	> List of Tracks
Podcasts	> List of Podcasts
Genres	> List of Genres > List of Artists > List of Albums > List of Tracks
Composers	> List of Composers > List of Albums > List of Tracks
Audiobooks	> List of Audiobooks

i The contents of the submenu items “List of...” are depending on the connected iPod®.

Navigating within the iPod® menu

- i** Navigating within the iPod® menu can be delayed depending on file names and sizes.

Navigating forwards

- ▶ Select a menu item in the iPod® menu.

If the selected item is the last submenu item, the playable track list will be displayed.

Selecting a list item automatically results in the corresponding track being played.

Navigating backwards

- ▶ Press the **BACK** button.

Skipping directly to the track currently playing

- ▶ **To open the Options menu:** In the iPod® menu, push **→** the controller **⊙**.



- ① Options menu

- ▶ **Skipping to the track:** In the Options menu, select the menu item Now Playing.

Abbreviated menu items in the iPod® menu

Menu items in the iPod® menu may be displayed in abbreviated form. This is indicated by the three dots “...” at the end of a menu item.

Pausing or resuming playback



- ① Play icon **▶**
- ② Track currently playing (highlighted)

Option 1

Pausing playback


- ▶ In the iPod® menu, highlight the track currently playing and press the controller **⊙**.



The play icon **▶** will change to the pause icon **⏸**.

AUX mode

iPod playback



Resuming playback

- ▶ In the iPod® menu, highlight the track currently playing once again and press the controller .

Playback will be resumed and the pause icon  will change to the play icon .

Option 2

Pausing playback

- ▶ **To open the Options menu:** In the iPod® menu, push  the controller .





① Options menu

- ▶ In the Options menu, select the menu item Pause.

Playback will be paused and the Options menu will be closed automatically.

Resuming playback

- ▶ **To open the Options menu:** In the iPod® menu, push  the controller .



① Options menu

- ▶ In the Options menu, select the menu item Play.

Playback will be resumed and the Options menu will be closed automatically.

Selecting a track

Selecting a track in the iPod® menu



- ▶ Navigate through the iPod® menu and select the desired track.

i Refer to the section “Navigating within the iPod® menu” on page 131 to find out how to navigate through the iPod® menu.

Skipping tracks forward/back

i “Skip track forward” skips to the next track. “Skip track back” skips to the beginning of the current track, if the track has been playing for more than 3 seconds. If the track has been playing for less than 3 seconds, it will skip to the beginning of the previous track.

Using the steering wheel

- ▶ Briefly press the  or  button on the steering wheel.

The system will execute the track skip corresponding to the button pressed.

Using the central control panel

- ▶ **To open the Options menu:** Highlight any track and push \rightarrow the controller \odot .



① Options menu

- ▶ In the Options menu, select the menu item Next Track or Prev. Track.

The system will execute the track skip corresponding to the selected menu item.

Fast forwarding/reversing

On the central control panel

- ▶ **To open the Options menu:** Highlight any track and push \rightarrow the controller \odot .



① Options menu

- ▶ **To start forwarding:** In the Options menu, select the menu item FF and press and hold the controller \odot .
- ▶ **To start reversing:** In the Options menu, select the menu item REW and press and hold the controller \odot .
- ▶ **To terminate forwarding/reversing:** Release the controller \odot .

On the steering wheel

- ▶ **To start forwarding:** Press and hold the \blacktriangle button.
- ▶ **To start reversing:** Press and hold the \blacktriangledown button.
- ▶ **To terminate forwarding/reversing:** Release the \blacktriangle or \blacktriangledown button.

Repeating tracks

i This function will keep repeating a track until it is cancelled.

- ▶ **To open the Options menu:** In the iPod® menu, highlight the desired track and push \rightarrow the controller \odot .




- ① Status display
- ② Options menu

iPod playback

- ▶ **To switch the repeat function on/off:**
In the Options menu, select the menu item Repeat Track.

Depending on the previous status, the function will be switched on or off. The status display ① changes accordingly.

- ◆ Display = function switched on
- ◆ Display = function switched off

When the function is switched on, the icon  additionally appears on the right in the top status line.


- i** The function switches off automatically when you:

- ◆ select another track in the iPod® menu,
- ◆ switch to a different audio or video signal source, for example to FM,
- ◆ switch the system off and back on again.

Random setting

- i** The random setting switches the shuffle song function of the iPod® mobile digital device on or off.

Switching the function on

- ▶ In the iPod® menu, highlight any track and push **➡** the controller .
- The Options menu appears.




- ① Status display (= function switched off)
 - ② Options menu
- ▶ In the Options menu, select the menu item Random.


The function will be switched on and the random view display appears.

Random view display



- ① Random view display
- ② Icon  for random function activated
- ③ Blinking pause icon (only visible if playback is paused)
- ④ Artist name
- ⑤ Album title
- ⑥ Track currently playing

Switching the function off

- ▶ In the random view display, push **➡** the controller .
- The Options menu appears.



① Status display (Display = function switched on)


② Options menu

► In the Options menu, select the menu item Random.

The function will be switched off and the iPod® top menu appears.

i After switching the function off, the position of the active track in the iPod® data structure is unknown to the system as long as you not select a track on the Driver Information System.

i Due to the unknown position, the following points are valid:

- ◆ In the Options menu, the menu item Now Playing has no function.
- ◆ The system will display the iPod® menu in the content area, instead of the track list with the track currently playing as described in the section “AUX main menu during iPod® playback” on page 129.
- ◆ The top category of the track currently playing will not be shown in the lower statusline as described in the section “AUX main menu during iPod® playback” on page 129.
- ◆ If you navigate through the iPod® menu, the track currently playing will not be marked with the play icon  as described in the section “AUX main menu during iPod® playback” on page 129.

As soon as you select a track on the Driver Information System, the position of that track in the iPod® structure is known to the system and the points described above are no longer valid.

i The random function is switched off automatically when you switch to a different audio or video signal source, for example to FM, or when you switch the system off and back on again.

Audio settings

Please see the section “Audio settings” on page 33 for a description of the audio settings.

AUX mode

USB playback

i For information on general system operation, please refer to the chapter “Functional introduction” from page 17.


i Accessing folders and tracks or scrolling through lists can be delayed depending on file names and sizes.

Starting playback

- ▶ **Option 1:** Connect a USB stick, see the section “Connecting signal sources” on page 123.
- ▶ **Option 2:** Switch to AUX mode and, if necessary, open the AUX main menu and select the USB stick as the signal source, see section “General operation” from page 127.

AUX main menu during USB playback

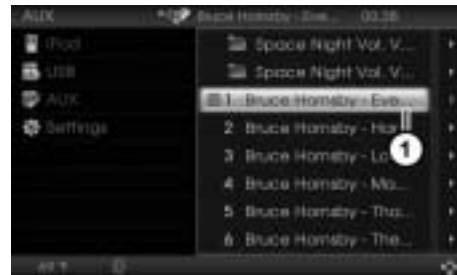


- ① Currently active main function
- ② AUX main menu with list of signal sources
- ③ Currently active entertainment source
- ④ Track currently playing
- ⑤ AUX content area with track/folder list
- ⑥ Name of the currently active folder
- ⑦ Play icon  for the track currently playing

Displaying the track and folder names

The system uses the names assigned during storage of the audio files on the USB memory stick for the track/folder names displayed in the AUX content area ⑤. Any ID3 tags in the audio files will be ignored.

If a track or folder name is too long, the system will display it in abbreviated form. This is indicated by the three dots “...” at the end of the name.



- ① Abbreviated track name

If this happens, you can call up a details display if you want to see the complete track name or you can call up a play info display if you want to see further information.

Calling up a details or play info display

- ▶ **To open the Options menu:** Highlight the desired track or folder and push ➡ the controller Ⓞ.

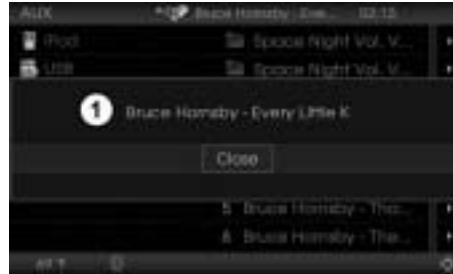
The Options menu appears.



① Options menu

- ▶ **To call up the details display:** In the Options menu, select the menu item Details.

The details display containing the complete file name appears.



① Details display

- ▶ **To close the details display:** Press the controller Ⓞ.
- ▶ **To call up the play info display:** In the Options menu, select the menu item Play Info.

The play info display of the track currently playing appears, containing several information.



- ① Current folder name
- ② Current file name
- ③ Current song title
- ④ Current album title
- ⑤ Current artist name

i In order to display the current song title, album title and artist name, these information must be stored as ID3 tags inside the MP3 or WMA track. If you select another track or if the system plays the next track, the play info display will not be closed and it will be updated automatically.

- ▶ **To close the play info display:** Press the controller Ⓞ.


AUX mode

USB playback

Selecting folders and tracks

- i** Folders can only be selected if the audio files were organized into folders when they were stored on the USB memory stick.



- 1 Menu item for the folder change function
- 2 Folder
- 3 Play icon  for track currently playing
- 4 Track
- 5 Highlighted track

- ▶ **To switch to the next folder level up:** Select the menu item ①.

The display will change accordingly.



- ▶ **To open a folder:** Select the desired folder.

You will see the tracks stored in this folder.

- ▶ **To play a track:** Select the desired track.

Skipping tracks forward/back



- i** “Skip track forward” skips to the next track. “Skip track back” skips to the beginning of the current track, if the track has been playing for more than 10 seconds. If the track has been playing for less than 10 seconds, it will skip to the beginning of the previous track.

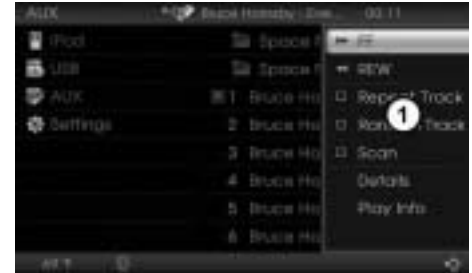
- ▶ Briefly press the  or  button on the steering wheel.

The system will execute the track skip corresponding to the button pressed.




Fast forwarding/reversing

On the central control panel





- ▶ **To open the Options menu:** Highlight any track and push  the controller .



- 1 Options menu

- ▶ **To start forwarding:** In the Options menu, select the menu item FF and press and hold the controller .
- ▶ **To start reversing:** In the Options menu, select the menu item REW and press and hold the controller .
- ▶ **To terminate forwarding/reversing:** Release the controller .

On the steering wheel

- ▶ **To start forwarding:** Press and hold the  button.
- ▶ **To start reversing:** Press and hold the  button.
- ▶ **To terminate forwarding/reversing:** Release the  or  button.

Repeating tracks or folders

i This function will keep repeating a track or folder until it is cancelled. Repetition of folders is only possible if the tracks are organized into folders. Tracks in subfolders within the folder to be repeated will be ignored.

► Highlight the desired track or folder.



- ① Folder
- ② Highlighted track
- ③ Track

► **To open the Options menu:** Push ➔ the controller Ⓞ.





- ① Status display
- ② Options menu

► **To switch the function on/off:** In the Options menu, select the menu item Repeat Track or Repeat Folder.

Depending on the previous status, the function will be switched on or off. The status display ① changes accordingly.

- ◆ Display = function switched on
- ◆ Display = function switched off

When the function is switched on, the icon  (repeat track) or  (repeat folder) additionally appears on the right in the top status line.

i The repeat track function switches off automatically when you select another track.

The repeat folder function switches off automatically when you select a track in another folder.

Both functions are switching off automatically when you:

- ◆ switch to a different audio or video signal source, for example to FM,
- ◆ switch the system off and back on again.

Random play

Switching random play of all tracks on/off


i Random play of all tracks plays all tracks on the USB memory stick in random order.

► Highlight the track currently playing.

AUX mode

USB playback



① Play icon  for track currently playing

▶ **To open the Options menu:** Push  the controller .




① Status display

② Options menu

▶ **To switch the function on/off:** In the Options menu, select the menu item Random Track.

Depending on the previous status, the function will be switched on or off. The status display ① accordingly.

- ◆ Display = function switched on
- ◆ Display = function switched off

When the function is switched on, the icon  additionally appears on the right in the top status line.

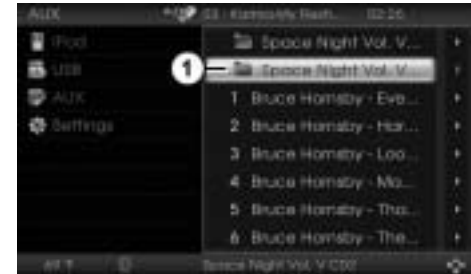
i The function switches off automatically when you:

- ◆ select any track,
- ◆ switch to a different audio or video signal source, for example to FM,
- ◆ switch the system off and back on again.

Switching random play within a specific folder on/off

i Random play within a specific folder plays all tracks in a specific folder in random order. Tracks in subfolders within the specific folder will be ignored.

▶ Highlight the desired folder.



① Highlighted folder

▶ **To open the Options menu:** Push  the controller .




① Status display

② Options menu

- ▶ **To switch the function on/off:** In the Options menu, select the menu item Random Folder.

Depending on the previous status, the function will be switched on or off. The status display ① changes accordingly.

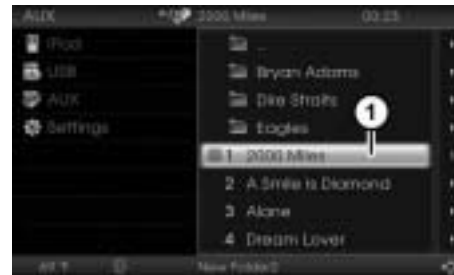
- ◆ Display = function switched on
- ◆ Display = function switched off

When the function is switched on, the icon  additionally appears on the right in the top status line.

- ▶ **i** The function switches off automatically when you:
 - ◆ select any track,
 - ◆ switch to a different audio or video signal source, for example to FM,
 - ◆ switch the system off and back on again.

Scan function

- ▶ **i** This function plays about 10 seconds of each track on the USB memory stick and then skips to the next track.
- ▶ Highlight the track from which you want the function to start.



① Highlighted track

- ▶ **To open the Options menu:** Push  the controller .




① Status display
② Options menu

- ▶ **To switch the function on/off:** In the Options menu, select the menu item Scan.

Depending on the previous status, the function will be switched on or off. The status display ① changes accordingly.

- ◆ Display = function switched on
- ◆ Display = function switched off

When the function is switched on, the icon  additionally appears on the right in the top status line.

AUX mode

USB playback

i The function switches off automatically when you:

- ◆ select any track,
- ◆ switch to a different audio or video signal source, for example to FM,
- ◆ switch the system off and back on again.

It also switches off automatically when it reaches the track where it started.

Audio settings

Please see the section “Audio settings” on page 33 for a description of the audio settings.

i For information on general system operation, please refer to the chapter “Functional introduction” from page 17.

Automatic video lock-out

i Switching the gear is described in detail in the vehicle’s operation manual. Please pay attention to the corresponding descriptions and safety instructions in the vehicle’s operation manual.

In the interest of safety, AUX video playback is only possible if the gear stick is in position **P**.

Else you will see a corresponding message in the display.



The system switches the picture back on as soon as the gear stick is in position **P**.

The AUX playback sound is not affected by the switch-off.

Starting playback

- i** Before starting playback, make sure that the correct video standard is set, see the section “AUX video standard” on page 146.
- ▶ Connect an AUX signal source, see the section “Connecting signal sources” on page 123.
 - ▶ Start playback on the AUX signal source.
 - ▶ Open the AUX main menu and, if necessary, select the AUX signal source as the signal source in the AUX main menu, see section “General operation” from page 127.

Depending on the AUX signal source, you will see one of the following full-screen displays.

Audio signal source (AUX audio source only):



Video signal source:



AUX mode

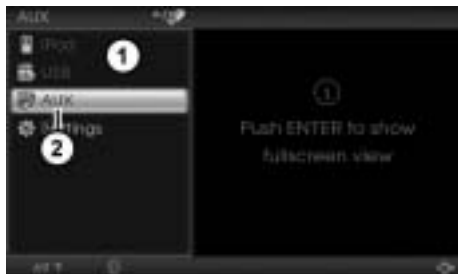
AUX playback

Opening/closing the AUX main menu during playback

Opening the AUX main menu and closing the AUX full-screen display

- ▶ Press the **BACK** button or the controller .

The AUX main menu appears.



- ① AUX main menu
- ② Menu item AUX

Closing the AUX main menu and opening the AUX full-screen display

- ▶ **Option 1:** Press the **BACK** button.

- ▶ **Option 2:** In the AUX main menu, select the menu item AUX.

The AUX full-screen display appears.



Audio settings

Please see the section “Audio settings” on page 33 for a description of the audio settings.

Video settings

Opening the Video Settings menu

- ▶ During AUX video playback, press and hold the **BACK** button until the AUX main menu appears.



- ▶ In the AUX main menu, select the menu item Settings.

A selection menu appears.



- ① Selection menu

- ▶ In the selection menu, select the menu item Video.

The Video Settings menu appears.



① Video Settings menu

The Video Settings menu includes the following functions:

- ◆ Aspect ratio, see page 145
- ◆ Brightness, color and contrast, see page 145
- ◆ AUX video standard, see page 146
- ◆ Video reset, see page 147

Closing the Video Settings menu

- ▶ **Option 1:** Push ← the controller (⊙) once.
- ▶ **Option 2:** Briefly press the **BACK** button.

Aspect ratio

- ▶ Open the Video Settings menu, see section “Opening the Video Settings menu” on page 144.



① Video Settings menu

- ▶ **To open the Aspect Ratio menu:** In the Video Settings menu, select the menu item Aspect Ratio.

The Aspect Ratio menu appears.

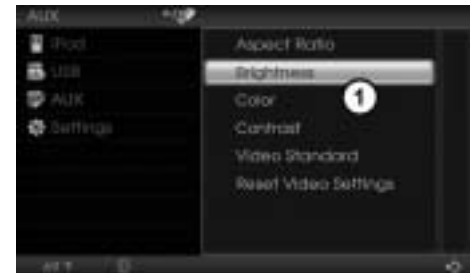


① Icon (⊙) for currently active setting

- ▶ **To set the aspect ratio:** Select the desired setting.

Brightness, color and contrast

- ▶ Open the Video Settings menu, see section “Opening the Video Settings menu” on page 144.



① Video Settings menu

AUX mode

AUX playback

- ▶ **To open the desired menu:** In the Video Settings menu, select either the menu item Brightness, Color or Contrast.



The corresponding menu appears.




The illustration shows the brightness setting

- ① Scale for the brightness setting
- ② Indicator

The position of the indicator ② on the scale ① shows the current setting.

- ▶ Turn  the controller  until the desired setting is reached.

The system saves this setting automatically.

- ▶ **To close the menu:** Press the controller  or briefly press the **BACK** button.

AUX video standard

i This function lets you adapt the AUX video input of the system to the video standard of the AUX video signal source. The video standards NTSC and PAL are available.

- ▶ Open the Video Settings menu, see section “Opening the Video Settings menu” on page 144.



① Video Settings menu

- ▶ **To open the AUX Video Standard menu:** In the Video Settings menu, select the menu item Video Standard.

The corresponding menu appears.



① Icon  for currently active setting

- ▶ **To set the video standard:** Select the desired setting.

Video reset

You can use the video reset function to reset the following settings to their factory settings:

- ◆ Aspect ratio
- ◆ Brightness
- ◆ Color
- ◆ Contrast
- ◆ AUX video standard

- ▶ Open the Video Settings menu, see section “Opening the Video Settings menu” on page 144.



① Video Settings menu

- ▶ In the Video Settings menu, select the menu item Reset Video Settings.

You will be prompted to confirm that you wish to reset the video settings.



- ▶ Select Yes or No.

The system will or will not reset the video settings, depending on the answer you select.

AUX mode

AUX playback

General information	150
PHONE main menu	152
Pairing/connecting/disconnecting a mobile phone	153
Options	161
Settings	167
Initiating a call/accepting or rejecting a call	173
Functions during a call	181
Special functions for two calls	185
Phonebook	188

General information

Safety instructions



WARNING

If you use the phone functions when driving, you may be distracted from the traffic situation, thus increasing the accident hazard.

Only use the phone functions when the vehicle is stationary.

When using the phone in the vehicle, the driver must observe all the laws and regulations of the relevant country.

If operation of phones during driving is legal, only do so when the traffic conditions permit this.

Otherwise, your attention may be distracted from the road traffic, resulting in an accident.

The Driver Information System features an integrated hands-free unit. You can use this unit in combination with a mobile phone connected with the system.

For your own safety, make all calls when driving using the hands-free unit. When you use the hands-free unit, concentrate on your driving, close all windows and avoid background noise.

If you do not wish to use the hands-free unit, stop or park your car when using the phone. Do not stop and park in areas where this is not permitted.

General information

Basic technical prerequisites for mobile phones

If you use a mobile phone with the system, the system will also act, among other things, as a hands-free unit.

To use a mobile phone with the system, it must be equipped with **Bluetooth® wireless technology** and with the following **Bluetooth®** 2.0 profiles.

- ◆ Hands-free profile (HFP)
- ◆ Phonebook access profile (PBAP)

i **Bluetooth® wireless technology** is a technology for wireless data communication over short distances of up to approx. 10 metres. The data exchange itself is controlled using profiles. The hands-free profiles enable the Driver Information System to be used as a hands-free unit. The phonebook access profile enable the Driver Information System to download the phonebook data from the mobile phone.

To be able to use a mobile phone with the system, the mobile phone must be connected with the system using the above mentioned technology. Please see the section “Pairing/connecting/disconnecting a mobile phone” on page 153 for a detailed description of how to connect the mobile phone with the system.

i The system does not support all mobile phones equipped with **Bluetooth® wireless technology**.

Interruptions to the connection while driving

Interruptions to the connection may occur if:

- ◆ there is inadequate network coverage,
- ◆ you are switching from one transmitting/receiving station (cell) to another and there is no voice channel available in this cell.

Displaying phone numbers and names

The Driver Information System can display the phone number and name of the caller when there is a call incoming, for example, but also in other menus and displays.

For phone numbers to be displayed, the caller must transmit their phone number.

This also applies to the name display. The following must additionally be stored in the phonebook for this:

- ◆ the phone number of the caller,
- ◆ the name.

i The phone number must be stored exactly as the caller transmits it.

Functional restrictions

Under the following circumstances, the phone functions may not or may not yet be useable:

- ◆ If it is not yet logged into a network.
- ◆ If the mobile phone is not connected with the Driver Information System.

During a phone call

During a phone call, the sound of the active audio or video source is muted.

PHONE main menu

- i** For information on general system operation, please refer to the chapter “Functional introduction” from page 17.

Available functions

The following functions are available in the PHONE main menu:

- ◆ Calling up the menu for entering a phone number, see the section “Entering a phone number” on page 173.
- ◆ Calling up the call history list (missed, received and dialed calls), see the section “Call history list” on page 176
- ◆ Calling up the phonebook, see the section “Calling up the phonebook” on page 188.
- ◆ Calling up the device list for pairing or connecting a mobile phone, see the section “Pairing a mobile phone” on page 153 or the section “Connecting a mobile phone” on page 156.
- ◆ Calling up PHONE settings, see the section “Calling up the Settings menu” on page 167.

Opening the PHONE main menu

- **Option 1:** Press the **INFO PHONE** button.

Either the PHONE main menu or the INFO main menu appears.

If the INFO main menu appears:

- Press the **INFO PHONE** button once more.

The PHONE main menu appears, see illustration below.

- **Option 2:** Press the **PHONE** button on the steering wheel.

The PHONE main menu appears.



① PHONE main menu

Pairing/connecting/disconnecting a mobile phone

i For information on general system operation, please refer to the chapter “Functional introduction” from page 17.

General

Before you can use a mobile phone with the Driver Information System, it must be paired and connected with the system via **Bluetooth®**.

i Please refer to the section “Basic technical prerequisites for mobile phones” on page 150.

A precondition for pairing and connecting is that **Bluetooth®** is activated on the mobile phone.

Activating **Bluetooth®** on the mobile phone

- ▶ Proceed as described in the user manual for your mobile phone.

Pairing a mobile phone

i Please refer also to the section “Basic technical prerequisites for mobile phones” on page 150.

You can pair a maximum of 5 mobile phones with the system. After pairing, the system will connect the mobile phone automatically, which causes disconnection of any mobile phone already connected. If the connection is not successful, the autoconnection process will be initiated, on condition that the autoconnection function is switched on, see section “Switching autoconnection function on/off” on page 167. The autoconnection process attempts to reconnect with the last mobile phone connected.

- ▶ Open the PHONE main menu, see the section “Opening the PHONE main menu” on page 152.



- ① PHONE main menu
- ② Menu item Connect Phone

- ▶ In the PHONE main menu, select the menu item Connect Phone.
The device list appears.

PHONE

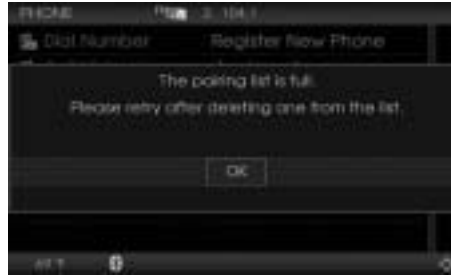
Pairing/connecting/disconnecting a mobile phone




- ① Menu item Register New Phone
- ② Device list

- ▶ In the device list, select the menu item Register New Phone.

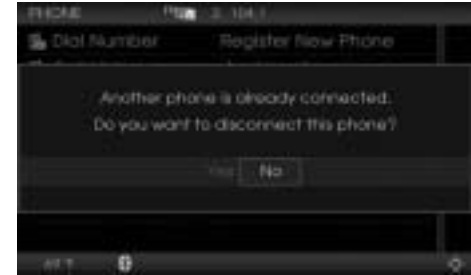
If there are 5 mobile phones already paired with the system, you will see an appropriate message.



You must delete at least one mobile phone pairing in order to be able to pair a new mobile phone with the system.

- ▶ **To close the message:** Press the controller .
- ▶ **To delete a mobile phone pairing:** See the section "Deleting a pairing" on page 164.

If there are fewer than 5 mobile phones paired with the system and another phone is already connected to the system, you will see a message prompting you to disconnect the phone.



- ▶ **To cancel pairing:** Select No. Pairing will be cancelled, and the device list appears again.
- ▶ **To continue pairing:** Select Yes. Pairing will be continued and you will see the following message.



Pairing/connecting/disconnecting a mobile phone

Pairing includes two steps: the mobile phone's search for the Driver Information System and the subsequent entry of the passkey on the mobile phone.

- i** The default value of the passkey is 1234. You can change the passkey, see section "Changing the passkey" on page 171.

There are 2 minutes of time available for entering the passkey.



- ① **Bluetooth**® name of the Driver Information System
- ② Passkey
- ③ Remaining time for entry of the passkey

- ▶ Start the search for the Driver Information System on the mobile phone. Proceed as described in the user manual for your mobile phone.

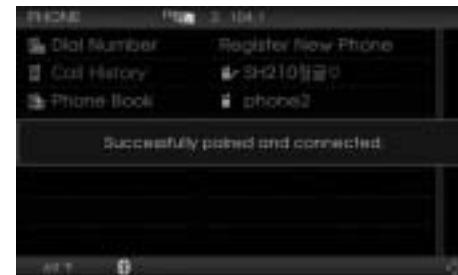
The **Bluetooth**® name of the Driver Information System is **GENESIS**, it is displayed under this name on the mobile phone.

- ▶ Start pairing on the mobile phone. When the mobile phone asks for the passkey, enter it on the mobile phone.

- i** The Driver Information System displays the current passkey, see previously illustration. The default value of the passkey is 1234. For the future, it is possible to change the passkey, see section "Changing the passkey" on page 171.

The system will abort entry of the passkey if the 2 minutes of time are running out without the passkey being entered.

If the passkey has been correctly entered, the mobile phone is paired with the system and automatically connected with the system. You will see an appropriate status display that automatically closes after a short time.



- i** Some mobile phones make a request at the end of the pairing, if the connection should be made automatically or requested each time.

If the passkey has not been correctly entered, you will see a prompt.



Pairing/connecting/disconnecting a mobile phone

- ▶ **To terminate passkey entry:** Select No.
- ▶ **To enter the passkey again:** Select Yes and enter the passkey once more.

If connection is not possible despite the passkey having been entered correctly, you will see an appropriate message.



i Even if the connection was not possible, the mobile phone is now paired with the system.

This message will close automatically and the system will attempt to connect with the last mobile phone that was connected. The autoconnection function must be switched on for this, see section “Switching autoconnection function on/off” on page 167.

i If you wish to make another connection attempt with the newly paired mobile phone, you must do so manually, see the section “Connecting manually” on page 156.

Connecting a mobile phone

i Please refer also to the section “Basic technical prerequisites for mobile phones” on page 150.

The following connection options are available:

- ◆ Connecting automatically, see page 156
- ◆ Connecting manually, see page 156

Connecting automatically

After the system is switched on, it automatically attempts to reconnect with the last mobile phone connected. The following conditions must be met for this:

- ◆ The mobile phone is switched on and is within the reception range of the system.
- ◆ The mobile phone is still paired with the system.

- ◆ **Bluetooth®** is activated on the mobile phone.
- ◆ Automatic connection function of the system is switched on, see the section “Switching autoconnection function on/off” on page 167.

If no connection is possible:

- ◆ If there is a certain mobile phone set as default for the autoconnection function, the system will attempt a connection to this mobile phone only.
- ◆ Otherwise the system will attempt a connection with another available mobile phone already previously paired with the system.

i For information on the default mobile phone for the autoconnection function, please refer to the section “Setting the default phone” on page 163.

Connecting manually

Calling up the device list

- ▶ Open the PHONE main menu, see the section “Opening the PHONE main menu” on page 152.

Pairing/connecting/disconnecting a mobile phone



- ① PHONE main menu
- ② Menu item Connect Phone

- ▶ In the PHONE main menu, select the menu item **Connect Phone**.

The device list appears.

- i** The list will be empty if there have not yet been any mobile phones paired with the system.

The icons before the list entries indicate the status of the respective mobile phone.



- ① Icon = Mobile phone is paired with the system and currently connected
 - ② Icon = Mobile phone is paired with the system, but not currently connected
 - ③ Phone name
 - ④ Device list
 - ⑤ Connection status icon
- Icon = A mobile phone is connected
 Icon = No mobile phone is connected

- i** You can change the phone name, see the section “Renaming a phone” on page 161.

Connecting a phone (Option 1)

- ▶ **If the desired mobile phone is not in the list:** Pair the mobile phone with the system, see the section “Pairing a mobile phone” on page 153.
- ▶ **If the desired mobile phone is in the list:** Select the mobile phone.

The system will start the connecting process, see section “Connecting process” on page 158.

Connecting a phone (Option 2)

- ▶ **If the desired mobile phone is not in the list:** Pair the mobile phone with the system, see the section “Pairing a mobile phone” on page 153.
- ▶ **If the desired mobile phone is in the device list:** Highlight the mobile phone in the device list.
- ▶ Push \Rightarrow the controller \odot once.

The Options menu appears.

Pairing/connecting/disconnecting a mobile phone



- ① Options menu
- ② Connect Phone menu item

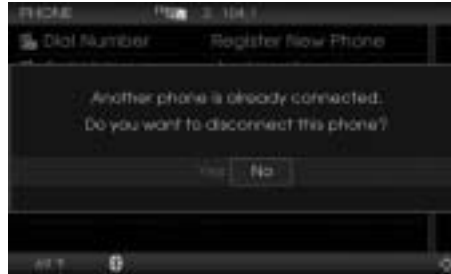
- ▶ In the Options menu, select the menu item Connect Phone.

The system will start the connecting process.

Connecting process

- i** Only one mobile phone can be connected with the system.

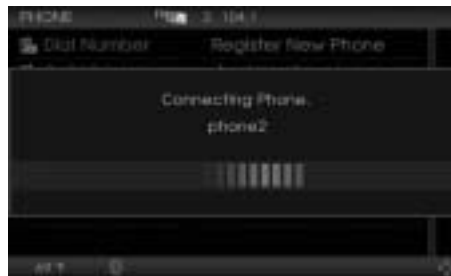
Option 1: If another mobile phone is already connected, you will be prompted to confirm that you wish to disconnect it.



- ▶ Select Yes to disconnect it.

The connection process starts, see next illustration.

Option 2: If no another mobile phone is already connected, the connection process starts immediately, see the following illustration.



If connection is successful, the icons in the device list and the icon in the bottom status line will change accordingly.

For information on that, please refer to the section "Connecting manually" on page 156.

If connection is not successful, you will see the message Connection Failed followed by the phone name. The message disappears after a short time.

Terminating a connection

- i** If you terminate a connection, the autoconnection process (see page 156) will be suspended until the system is switched off/on or until a phone will be connected manually (see page 156).

Calling up the device list

- ▶ Open the PHONE main menu, see the section "Opening the PHONE main menu" on page 152.

Pairing/connecting/disconnecting a mobile phone



- ① PHONE main menu
- ② Menu item Connect Phone

- ▶ In the PHONE main menu, select the menu item Connect Phone.
The device list appears.



- ① Icon = Mobile phone is paired with the system and currently connected
- ② Icon = Mobile phone is paired with the system, but not currently connected

- ③ Phone name
 - ④ Device list
 - ⑤ Connection status icon
- Icon = A mobile phone is connected
Icon = No mobile phone is connected

i You can change the phone name, see the section "Renaming a phone" on page 161.

Disconnecting a phone (Option 1)

- ▶ Select the desired connected mobile phone in the device list.

You will be prompted to confirm that you wish to terminate the connection, see section "Confirming disconnecting" on page 160.

Disconnecting a phone (Option 2)

- ▶ Highlight the desired connected mobile phone in the device list.
- ▶ Push the controller once.
The Options menu appears.



- ① Options menu
 - ② Disconnect Phone menu item
- ▶ In the Options menu, select the menu item Disconnect Phone.
You will be prompted to confirm that you wish to disconnect the mobile phone.

Pairing/connecting/disconnecting a mobile phone

Confirming disconnecting



- ▶ Select Yes.

The connection will be terminated.

Dropped connection

i The connection between the mobile phone and the system can drop, for example if the mobile phone is switched off or if it is no longer within the reception range of the system.

If the connection between the mobile phone and the system drops, you will see an appropriate message.



The system will automatically attempt to re-establish the connection, provided that the automatic connection function is still switched on, see section “Switching autoconnection function on/off” on page 167.

- i** For information on general system operation, please refer to the chapter “Functional introduction” from page 17.

Options menu

You can open the Options menu for each mobile phone shown in the device list.

The Options menu includes the following functions:

- ◆ Renaming a phone, see page 161
- ◆ Setting the default phone, see page 163
- ◆ Connecting/Disconnecting a mobile phone, see page 163
- ◆ Deleting a pairing, see page 164
- ◆ Deleting all pairings, see page 165
- ◆ Showing details, see page 166

Calling up the device list

- ▶ Open the PHONE main menu, see the section “Opening the PHONE main menu” on page 152.



- ① PHONE main menu
- ② Connect Phone menu item
- ▶ In the PHONE main menu, select the menu item **Connect Phone**.
The device list appears.



- ① Device list

Renaming a phone

- i** The phone names shown in the device list generally originate from the mobile phones themselves. You can, however, also change the names.

- ▶ Call up the device list, see the section “Calling up the device list” on page 161.



- ① Device list
- ▶ Highlight the desired mobile phone in the device list ①.
- ▶ Push **➡** the controller **⊙**.
The Options menu appears.

Options



- ① Menu item Rename Phone
- ② Options menu

► In the Options menu, select the menu item Rename Phone.

The input menu appears.



- ① Input field with characters already entered
- ② Currently highlighted character
- ③ Speller

- ④ Confirm entry
- ⑤ Delete all characters in the input field
- ①
- ⑥ Delete the last character in the input field
- ①
- ⑦ Enter space
- ⑧ Switch character set
- ⑨ Enlarged display of the currently highlighted character in the speller
- ③

The input menu has two user-control areas: The area with the speller ③ and the area with the menu items ④ and ⑤.

- **To move from one area to another:** Push ↑ ↓ the controller ④.
- **To enter a character:** In the speller, highlight a character by turning ⏪ ⏩ the controller ⑤ and press the controller ④.

The character is entered and appears in the input field ①.

- **To switch character set:** In the speller, select one of the menu items ⑧.

The corresponding character set appears in the speller.

- **To delete the last character in the input field:** In the speller, select the menu item ⑥.

The last character entered is deleted.

- **To delete all characters in the input field:** From the speller, push ↓ the controller ④ and select the menu item Delete All.

All characters are deleted.

- **To make a new entry:** Push ↑ the controller ④ to move back to the speller and enter characters as described previously.
- **To confirm an entry:** From the speller, push ↓ the controller ④ and select the menu item OK.

Setting the default phone

i With this function you can set a certain mobile phone as default for the autoconnection process. When set, the autoconnection process will attempt a connection to the set mobile phone only. When not set, the autoconnection process will attempt a connection with another available mobile phone already previously paired with the system.

i For information on the autoconnection process please refer to section “Connecting automatically” on page 156.

► Call up the device list, see the section “Calling up the device list” on page 161.



① Device list

- Highlight the desired mobile phone in the device list.
- Push \rightarrow the controller \odot once.
The Options menu appears.



- ① Status display
- ② Menu item Set as Default
- ③ Options menu

The status display ① shows whether the mobile phone is already set as the default phone or not.

- ◆ Display = Mobile phone is set as the default phone
- ◆ Display = Mobile phone is not set as the default phone

- **To set or to cancel a mobile phone as the default phone:** In the Options menu, select the menu item Set as Default.

Depending on the previous status, the mobile phone will be set or cancelled as the default phone. The status display ① changes accordingly.

i You can set only one mobile phone as the default phone. Setting a mobile phone as the default phone cancels the previously default setting of a different mobile phone.

Connecting/Disconnecting a mobile phone

i Both functions are also available outside the Options menu, see sections “Connecting manually” on page 156 and “Terminating a connection” on page 158.

If you disconnect a mobile phone, the autoconnection process (see page 156) will be suspended until the system is switched off/on or until a phone will be connected manually (see page 156).

Options

Connecting

- ▶ Call up the device list, see the section “Calling up the device list” on page 161.



① Device list

- ▶ Continue as described in the section “Connecting a phone (Option 2)” on page 157.

Disconnecting

- ▶ Call up the device list, see the section “Calling up the device list” on page 161.



① Device list

- ▶ Continue as described in the section “Disconnecting a phone (Option 2)” on page 159.

Deleting a pairing

i This function deletes the pairing, the phonebook data and the call history of a mobile phone stored in the system, except for the currently connected mobile phone. If you want to delete this too, first you must disconnect the mobile phone, see section “Terminating a connection” on page 158.

- ▶ Call up the device list, see the section “Calling up the device list” on page 161.



① Device list

- ▶ Highlight the desired mobile phone in the device list.
- ▶ Push → the controller Ⓞ. The Options menu appears.



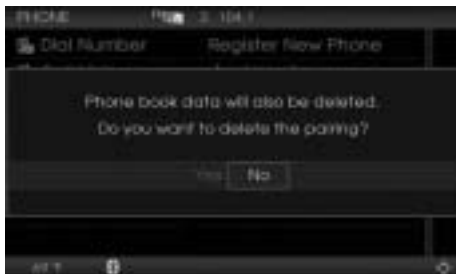
① Options menu

② Menu item Delete Pairing

- ▶ In the Options menu, select the menu item Delete Pairing.

i The menu item Delete Pairing cannot be selected if the highlighted mobile phone is connected with the system.

You will be prompted to confirm that you wish to delete the pairing.



- ▶ Select Yes

The pairing and the phonebook data of the mobile phone will be deleted.

Before you can reconnect this mobile phone with the system you must pair it with the system again, see the section “Pairing a mobile phone” on page 153.

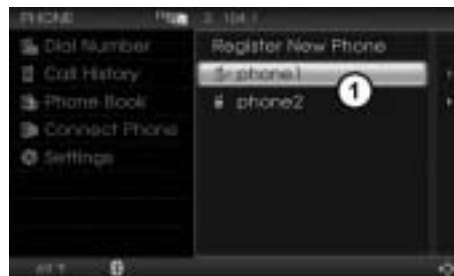
After the pairing is deleted, the system will automatically search for another mobile phone already paired with the system. If it finds one, this mobile phone will be automatically connected with the system.

Deleting all pairings

i This function deletes all pairings, all phonebook data and all call history lists of all mobile phones stored in the Driver Information System, except for the currently connected mobile phone.

If you want to delete this too, first you must disconnect the mobile phone, see section “Terminating a connection” on page 158.

- ▶ Call up the device list, see the section “Calling up the device list” on page 161.



- ① Device list

- ▶ In the device list, highlight a mobile phone push ➔ the controller Ⓒ.

The Options menu appears.



- ① Options menu

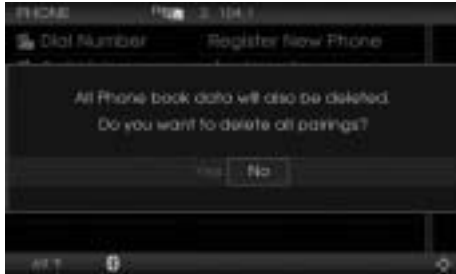
- ② Menu item Delete All Pairings

- ▶ In the Options menu, select the menu item Delete All Pairings.

i The menu item Delete All Pairings cannot be selected if the device list does not contain any mobile phones.

You will be prompted to confirm that you wish to delete all pairings.

Options



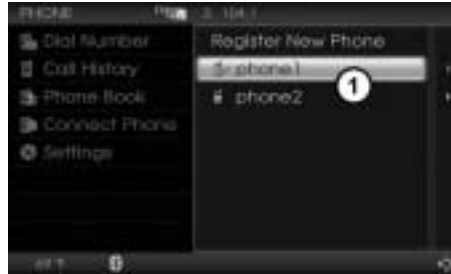
- ▶ Select Yes.

All mobile phone pairings and phonebook data are now deleted, except for the currently connected mobile phone.

Before you can reconnect these mobile phones with the system you must pair them with the system again, see the section “Pairing a mobile phone” on page 153.

Showing details

- i** This function shows you the **Bluetooth®** device name and address of a paired mobile phone.
- ▶ Call up the device list, see the section “Calling up the device list” on page 161.



- ① Device list

- ▶ In the device list, highlight the desired mobile phone and push **➔** the controller **⊙** once.

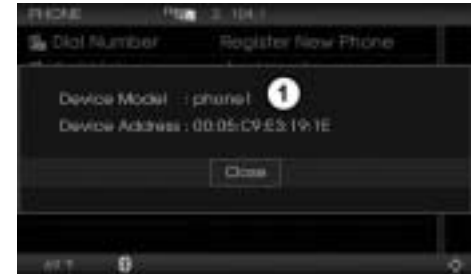
The Options menu appears.



- ① Options menu
- ② Menu item Details

- ▶ In the Options menu, select the menu item Details.

The details screen appears.



- ① Details screen

- ▶ **To close the details screen:** Press the controller **⊙**.

- i** For information on general system operation, please refer to the chapter "Functional introduction" from page 17.

Settings menu

The Settings menu includes the following functions:

- ◆ Switching autoconnection function on/off, see page 167
- ◆ Showing the device info, see page 168
- ◆ Initialization functions, see page 168
- ◆ Changing the passkey, see page 171

Calling up the Settings menu

- Open the PHONE main menu, see the section "Opening the PHONE main menu" on page 152.



- ① PHONE main menu
② Settings menu item

- In the PHONE main menu, select the menu item Settings.

The Settings menu appears.





- ① Settings menu

Switching autoconnection function on/off

- Call up the Settings menu, see the section "Calling up the Settings menu" on page 167.



- ① Status display
② BT Autoconnection menu item
③ Settings menu
④ Connection status icon

Icon  = A mobile phone is connected
Icon  = No mobile phone is connected

Settings

- ▶ In the Settings menu, select the menu item BT Autoconnection.

The autoconnection function will be activated or deactivated, depending on the previous status. The status display ① changes accordingly.

- ◆ Display = function activated
- ◆ Display = function deactivated

Showing the device info

- i** This function shows you the **Bluetooth®** device name and address of the Driver Information System.
- ▶ Call up the Settings menu, see the section "Calling up the Settings menu" on page 167.




- ① My Device Info menu item
- ② Settings menu

- ▶ In the Settings menu, select the menu item My Device Info.

The info screen appears.



- ▶ **To close the info screen:** Press the controller .

Initialization functions

Initialization includes the following functions:

- ◆ Deleting the call history, see page 169
- ◆ Deleting the phonebook, see page 169
- ◆ Deleting all pairings, see page 170
- ◆ Resetting Bluetooth® settings to factory setting, see page 170

Calling up the Initialization menu

- ▶ Call up the Settings menu, see the section "Calling up the Settings menu" on page 167.



- ① Settings menu
- ② Initialization menu item

- ▶ In the Settings menu, select the menu item Initialization.

The Initialization menu appears.



① Initialization menu

Deleting the call history

i This function deletes the complete call history (missed, received and dialed calls) of the currently connected mobile phone stored in the Driver Information System.

- ▶ Call up the Initialization menu, see the section "Calling up the Initialization menu" on page 168.



① Delete Call History menu item

② Initialization menu

- ▶ In the Initialization menu, select the menu item Delete Call History.

You will be prompted to confirm that you really want to delete the complete call history.



- ▶ Select Yes or No.

The complete call history will be deleted or not, depending on the answer selected.

Deleting the phonebook

i This function deletes the complete phonebook of the currently connected mobile phone stored in the Driver Information System.

- ▶ Call up the Initialization menu, see the section "Calling up the Initialization menu" on page 168.



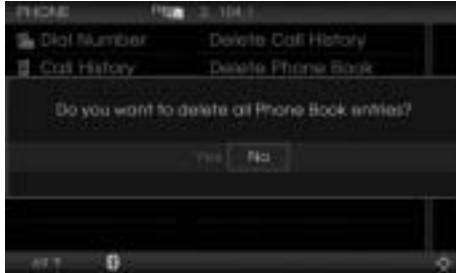
① Delete Phone Book menu item

② Initialization menu

Settings

- ▶ In the Initialization menu, select the menu item Delete Phone Book.

You will be prompted to confirm that you really want to delete the complete phonebook.



- ▶ Select Yes or No.

The complete phonebook will be deleted or not, depending on the answer selected.

Deleting all pairings

- i** This function deletes all pairings as well as the complete call history and phonebooks of all mobile phones stored in the Driver Information System.

- ▶ Call up the Initialization menu, see the section "Calling up the Initialization menu" on page 168.



- ① Delete All Pairings menu item
- ② Initialization menu

- ▶ In the Initialization menu, select the menu item Delete All Pairings.
You will be prompted to confirm that you really want to delete all pairings.



- ▶ Select Yes or No.

All pairings will be deleted or not, depending on the answer selected.

Resetting **Bluetooth®** settings to factory setting

- i** This function resets the following **Bluetooth®** settings to factory setting:
 - ◆ **Bluetooth®** autoconnect (please see section "Switching autoconnection function on/off" on page 167 for details)
 - ◆ **Bluetooth®** passkey (please see section "Changing the passkey" on page 171 for details)

- ▶ Call up the Initialization menu, see the section "Calling up the Initialization menu" on page 168.



- ① Reset Phone Settings menu item
- ② Initialization menu

- ▶ In the Initialization menu, select the menu item Reset Phone Settings.

You will be prompted to confirm that you really want to reset the **Bluetooth**® settings to factory default.



- ▶ Select Yes or No.

The **Bluetooth**® settings will be set to factory default or not, depending on the answer selected.

Changing the passkey

- i** During pairing a mobile phone with the Driver Information System, you must enter the passkey (please see section "Pairing a mobile phone" on page 153 for details). The default value of the passkey is 1234. You can change the passkey, see the following description.

- ▶ Call up the Settings menu, see the section "Calling up the Settings menu" on page 167.



- ① Change Passkey menu item
- ② Settings menu

- ▶ In the Settings menu, select the menu item Change Passkey.

The input menu appears.

Settings



- ① Input field with current passkey
- ② Speller
- ③ Enlarged display of the currently highlighted character in the speller ②
- ④ Confirm the passkey
- ⑤ Delete all digits in the input field ①
- ⑥ Delete the last digit in the input field ①
- ⑦ Currently highlighted digit

The input menu has two user-control areas: The area with the speller ② and the area with the menu items ④ and ⑤.

- ▶ **To move from one area to another:**
Push **↑** or push **↓** the controller **⊙**.

At the beginning, the input field ① shows the current passkey and the menu item Delete All is highlighted.

- ▶ **To delete all digits of the current passkey displayed in the input field:**
Select the menu item Delete All.
All digits are deleted.
- ▶ **To make a new entry after deleting all digits in the input field:** Push **↑** the controller **⊙** to move to the speller and enter digits, see the following description.
- ▶ **To enter a digit:** In the speller, highlight a digit by turning **⏪** the controller **⊙** and press the controller **⊙**.
The digit is entered and appears in input field.
- ▶ **To delete the last digit of the current passkey displayed in the input field:**
In the speller, select the menu item ⑥.
The last digit is deleted.
- ▶ **To confirm the passkey:** After entering 4 digits, the menu item OK will be highlighted automatically. Press the controller **⊙** to confirm the passkey.

Initiating a call/accepting or rejecting a call

i For information on general system operation, please refer to the chapter “Functional introduction” from page 17.

Initiating an outgoing call

The following options for initiating an outgoing call are available:

- ◆ Entering a phone number, see page 173
- ◆ Using redial, see page 174
- ◆ Call history list, see page 176
- ◆ Using the phonebook, see the section “Phonebook” on page 188

Entering a phone number

- ▶ Open the PHONE main menu, see the section “Opening the PHONE main menu” on page 152.
- ▶ In the PHONE main menu, select the menu item Dial Number. The input menu appears.





- ① Input field with digits already entered
- ② Speller
- ③ Enlarged display of the currently highlighted character in the speller
- ④ Initiate a call
- ⑤ Store number in the phonebook
- ⑥ Delete the last digit in the input field
- ⑦ Delete all digits in the input field
- ⑧ Currently highlighted digit

i At the beginning, the input field ① is empty.

The input menu has two user-control areas: The area with the speller ② and the area with the menu items ④, ⑤ and ⑦.

- ▶ **To move from one area to another:** Push **↑** **↓** the controller **⊙**.
- ▶ **To enter a number:** In the speller ②, highlight a digit by turning **↶** **↷** the controller **⊙** and press the controller **⊙**.
The digit is entered and appears in input field ①.
- ▶ **To delete the last digit in the input field:** In the speller, select the menu item ⑥.
The last entered digit is deleted.
- ▶ **To delete all digits in the input field:** From the speller, push **↓** the controller **⊙** and select the menu item Delete All.
All digits are deleted.
- ▶ **To make a new entry:** Push **↑** the controller **⊙** to move back to the speller and enter a number as described previously.

Initiating a call/accepting or rejecting a call


- ▶ **To store an entered number in the phonebook:** From the speller, push ↓ the controller  and select the menu item SAVE.
 - ▶ The name input menu appears, continue as described in the section “Creating a new entry”, see page 190.
- ▶ **To initiate a call to the phone number entered:** From the speller, push ↓ the controller  and select the menu item CALL.

The mobile phone initiates the call; a corresponding message is displayed.



① Name of the call partner

i The name of the call partner is only displayed if the dialed number is stored in the phonebook. Otherwise only the dialed number is displayed.


- ▶ **To cancel the call before the other party answers:** Press the controller .

The call is cancelled.

If the other party answers, the call is active and you conduct the call over the hands-free unit. Please see the section “Functions during a call” on page 181 for a description of the functions that are possible during a call.

Using redial


i You can use redial as a quick way of initiating another call to the last number dialed by the mobile phone.



- ▶ Press and hold the  button on the steering wheel.

If the connected mobile phone supports this feature, the call to the corresponding phone number will be initiated.

If the connected mobile phone does not support this feature, nothing happens.

If the connected mobile phone responds with an error, you will see the message: Dial failed. Please check the state of the connected phone and try again..

- ▶ To close the message: Press the controller .

- ▶ **To cancel the call before the other party answers:** Press the controller  or press and hold the  button on the steering wheel.

In both cases, the call is cancelled.

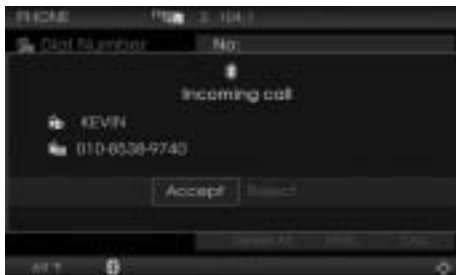
If the other party answers, the call is active and you conduct the call over the hands-free unit.


i Please see the section “Functions during a call” on page 181 for a description of the functions available during a call.

i You can also use the call history list for the redial function, see the section “Call history list” on page 176.

Accepting/rejecting an incoming call


The call screen is displayed when there is a call incoming.



- ▶ **Accepting a call:** Select Accept or briefly press the  button on the steering wheel.

The call is active and you conduct it over the hands-free unit.

- i** Please see the section “Functions during a call” on page 181 for a description of the functions that are possible during a call.

- ▶ **Rejecting a call:** Select Reject or press and hold the  button on the steering wheel.

The call is rejected.

Call history list

i For information on general system operation, please refer to the chapter “Functional introduction” from page 17.

General Information

The call history list contains the following:

- ◆ Missed calls
- ◆ Received calls
- ◆ Dialed numbers

Each paired mobile phone has its own independent call history list, but only the list of the currently connected mobile phone can be accessed. Each list contains a maximum of 20 entries.

The call history list of a mobile phone will be deleted automatically, as soon as the pairing of the mobile phone is deleted.

The call history lists of the system are independent of those of the mobile phones.

The system can only log calls or dialed numbers in the call history list if the mobile phone is connected with it and if the phone functions are being used via the system.

Calling up the call history list

- ▶ Open the PHONE main menu, see the section “Opening the PHONE main menu” on page 152.



- ① PHONE main menu
- ② Call History menu item

- ▶ In the PHONE main menu, select the menu item Call History.

The call history list appears. The entries in the list are sorted in chronological order, with the most recent at the top.

i You will find an operating example for a list in the section “Lists” on page 29 of the chapter “Functional introduction”. There you will also find the description of how to scroll through a list.



- ① Missed call (Icon / phone symbol with question mark)
- ② Incoming call (Icon / phone symbol with left arrow)
- ③ Outgoing call (Icon / phone symbol with right arrow)

i Incoming and missed calls:

- ◆ If the other party has transmitted the phone number, the corresponding list entry will show it.
- ◆ If the phone number is exactly as transmitted stored in the phonebook, the name stored in the corresponding phonebook entry will be shown instead of the number.
- ◆ If the other party has not transmitted the phone number, the name Unknown will be shown.

i Outgoing calls:

The corresponding list entry shows either the phone number or the name, depending on the method the call was initiated.

Available options in the call history list

The following options are available in the call history list:

- ◆ Initiating a call to a call history list entry, see page 177
- ◆ Saving a list entry to the phonebook, see page 178
- ◆ Deleting an individual list entry, see page 178
- ◆ Deleting all list entries, see page 179

Initiating a call to a call history list entry

i Initiating a call to a call history list entry named Unknown is not possible.

- ▶ Call up the call history list, see the section “Calling up the call history list” on page 176.




① Call history list

Option 1

- ▶ Select the desired entry in the call history list.

The mobile phone initiates the call.



- ▶ **To cancel the call before the other party answers:** Press the controller .

The call is cancelled.

If the other party answers, the call is active and you conduct the call over the hands-free unit.

i Please see the section “Functions during a call” on page 181 for a description of the functions available during a call.

Option 2


- ▶ Highlight the desired entry in the call history list.
- ▶ Push  the controller  once. The Options menu appears.



- ① Menu item Call
- ② Options menu

- ▶ In the Options menu, select the menu item Call.

The mobile phone initiates the call.

- ▶ **To cancel the call before the other party answers:** Press the controller .

The call is cancelled.

Call history list

If the other party answers, the call is active and you conduct the call over the hands-free unit.

i Please see the section “Functions during a call” on page 181 for a description of the functions available during a call.

Saving a list entry to the phonebook


i Only list entries without a name can be saved to the phonebook.

- ▶ Call up the call history list, see the section “Calling up the call history list” on page 176.



① Call history list

- ▶ Highlight the desired entry in the call history list.

- ▶ Push ➔ the controller  once.
The Options menu appears.



- ① Menu item Save to Phone Book
- ② Options menu

- ▶ In the Options menu, select the menu item Save to Phone Book.

The name input menu appears.

Continue as described in the section “Name input menu”, see page 190.


Deleting an individual list entry

- ▶ Call up the call history list, see the section “Calling up the call history list” on page 176.



① Call history list

- ▶ Highlight the desired entry in the call history list.

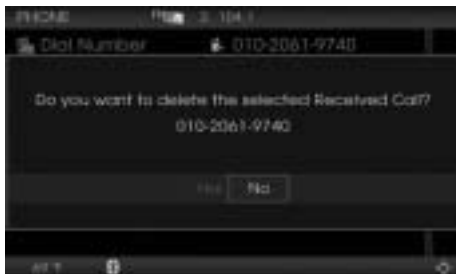
- ▶ Push ➔ the controller  once.
The Options menu appears.



- ① Menu item Delete
- ② Options menu

- ▶ In the Options menu, select the menu item Delete.

You will be prompted to confirm that you really want to delete the entry.



- ▶ Select Yes or No.

The entry will be deleted or retained, depending on the answer selected.

Deleting all list entries

i This function deletes all entries in the call history list of the currently connected mobile phone stored in the Driver Information System.

- ▶ Call up the call history list, see the section “Calling up the call history list” on page 176.



① Call history list

- ▶ In the call history list, push \rightarrow the controller \odot once.
The Options menu appears.



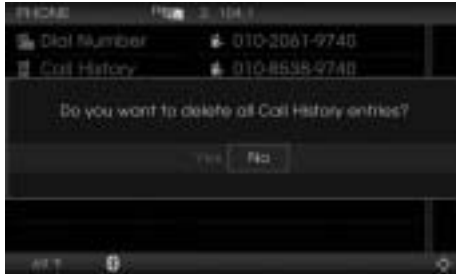
① Menu item Delete All
② Options menu

- ▶ In the Options menu, select the menu item Delete All.

You will be prompted to confirm that you really want to delete all entries in the call history list currently open.

PHONE

Call history list



- ▶ Select Yes or No.

The entries will be deleted or retained, depending on the answer selected.

Functions during a call

i For information on general system operation, please refer to the chapter “Functional introduction” from page 17.

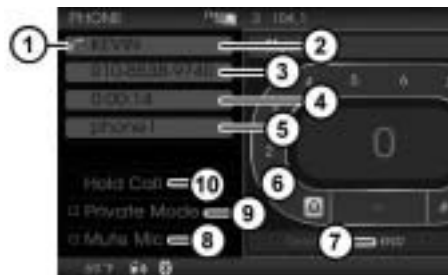
Overview

The following functions are available during a call:

- ◆ Setting the call volume, see the section “Setting the volume” on page 33
- ◆ Mute the microphone, see page 182
- ◆ Switching private mode on/off, see page 182
- ◆ Holding and reactivating a call, see page 183
- ◆ Sending DTMF tones, see page 183
- ◆ Ending a call, see page 184
- ◆ Special functions for two calls, see page 185

Call display

The following illustration shows the display during a call via the mobile phone.



- ① Call status display:
 Icon = Call is active
 Icon = Call is on hold
 Icon = Private mode is switched on
 Icon = Microphone is muted
- ② Name of the other party
- ③ Phone number of the other party
- ④ Call duration
- ⑤ Name of the mobile phone connected with the system
- ⑥ Speller
- ⑦ End the call
- ⑧ Switch the microphone on/off
- ⑨ Switch private mode on/off
- ⑩ Hold or reactivate the call

i If the other party transmits the phone number and if it is exactly as transmitted stored in the phonebook, the display ② shows the name stored in the corresponding phonebook entry. Additionally, the display ③ shows the phone number. If the transmitted phone number is not stored in the phonebook, the display ② shows the phone number and the display ③ is empty. If no phone number is transmitted, the display ② shows Unknown and the display ③ is empty.

User control area of the call display

The call display has three user-control areas:

- ◆ Area with the speller ⑥
- ◆ Area with the menu item ⑦
- ◆ Area with the menu items ⑧ - ⑩
- ▶ **To move from one area to another:**
 Push the controller .

PHONE

Functions during a call

Mute the microphone

When the microphone is muted, the other party cannot hear you although you can still hear them.





- ① Call status display
- ② Menu item Mute Mic
- ③ Microphone status display

► In the call display, select the menu item Mute Mic.

Depending on the previous status, the microphone will be muted or not. The microphone status display ③ will change accordingly.

- ◆ Display = microphone muted
- ◆ Display = microphone not muted

Further, the call status display ① will change to  (microphone muted) or  (microphone not muted).

Switching private mode on/off

i Private mode allows you to transfer the call back and forth between the hands-free unit and the mobile phone. This function is not possible with all mobile phones. Some mobile phones disconnect the **Bluetooth**[®] connection between the system and mobile phone when private mode is switched on. Private mode is automatically switched off when you end the last active call.


When private mode is switched off you conduct the call over the hands-free unit (vehicle), when private mode is switched on you conduct the call over the mobile phone.

Even when private mode is switched on, the sound of the active audio or video source is muted.




- ① Call status display
- ② Private Mode menu item
- ③ Private mode status display

► **Option 1:** Before or during the call, select the menu item Private Mode in the PHONE main menu.

► **Option 2:** During the call, press the  button on the steering wheel.

Depending on the previous status, private mode will be switched on or off. The private mode status display ③ will change accordingly.

- ◆ Display = private mode switched on
- ◆ Display = private mode switched off

Further, the call status display ① changes to .

Functions during a call

i Switching private mode on/off on the steering wheel will also work if the monitor is showing something other than PHONE mode, for example the map display in Navigation mode.

If you initiate or accept a call directly on the mobile phone, private mode will be switched on automatically. But this function is not possible with all mobile phones.

Holding and reactivating a call


i This function is only available if it is supported and enabled by the phone network operator and supported by the mobile phone.

When the call is on hold, you will not hear the other party and they will not hear you.




- ① Call status display
- ② Hold Call or Activate Call menu item

▶ **To hold a call:** In the call display, select the menu item Hold Call.

The call is on hold and the menu item Hold Call changes to Activate Call. Further, the call status display ① changes to .

▶ **To reactivate a call:** In the call display, select the menu item Activate Call.

The call is reactivated and the menu item Activate Call changes to Hold Call. Further, the call status display ① changes to .


Sending DTMF tones

i DTMF tones can be sent during the call. You can use them to control answering machines or other devices, for example for remote query functions.



① Display of the digits or characters already sent

② Speller

▶ In the speller ②, highlight a digit or character and press the controller .

The corresponding tone will be sent and the digit or character appears in the display ①.


PHONE

Functions during a call

Ending a call



① END menu item

- ▶ **Option 1:** In the call display, select the menu item END.
- ▶ **Option 2:** Press and hold the  button on the steering wheel until the call is ended.

i Ending the call using the steering wheel will also work if the display is showing something other than PHONE mode, for example the map display in Navigation mode.

i For information on general system operation, please refer to the chapter “Functional introduction” from page 17.

Overview

The following functions are available provided they are supported and enabled by the phone network operator and supported by the mobile phone:


- ◆ Calling a second party, see page 185
- ◆ Accepting/rejecting a call-waiting call, see page 186
- ◆ Swapping between two calls, see page 186
- ◆ Ending the active call, see page 187

Calling a second party



- ① Call status display
- ② Hold Call menu item


- ▶ During a single call, select the menu item Hold Call in the call display.

The call is on hold and the menu item Hold Call changes to Activate Call. Further, the call status display ① changes to .

Special functions for two calls

- ▶ **To enter the phone number:** Enter the individual digits of the phone number as described in the section “Entering a phone number”, see page 173.
- ▶ **To complete entry and initiate the second call:** Select the menu item CALL.

The mobile phone initiates the call to the second party; a corresponding message is displayed.

- ▶ **To cancel the call before the other party answers:** Press the controller .

The first call is automatically reactivated.

If the other party answers, the second call is active.

You now have the following options:

- ◆ Swapping between two calls, see page 186
- ◆ Ending the active call, see page 187

Special functions for two calls

Accepting/rejecting a call-waiting call

i This function is only available if it is supported by the phone and the phone service provider and if it is enabled.

If someone rings you during a call, you will see the call waiting display.




- 1 Menu item Hold 1st Call
- 2 Menu item End 1st Call
- 3 Menu item Ignore

The following functions are available:

- ◆ Accepting the call-waiting call and holding the first call
- ◆ Accepting the call-waiting call and ending the first call
- ◆ Rejecting the call-waiting call

Accepting the call-waiting call and holding the first call

- ▶ **Option 1:** Select Hold 1st Call.
- ▶ **Option 2:** Briefly press the  button on the steering wheel.

In both cases, the call-waiting call is accepted and active and the first call is on hold.

Accepting the call-waiting call and ending the first call

- ▶ Select End 1st Call.
- The call-waiting call is accepted and active and the first call is ended.



Rejecting the call-waiting call

- ▶ Select Ignore.
- The first call remains active.

Swapping between two calls

If you have one active call and one call on hold, you can swap between the two calls.




- 1 Icon  for the active call
- 2 Name of the active party
- 3 Phone number of the active party
- 4 Duration of the active call
- 5 Name of the party on hold
- 6 Swap Calls menu item
- 7 Icon  for the call on hold

- i** If the other party transmits the phone number and if it is exactly as transmitted stored in the phonebook, the following is valid:
- ◆ The displays ② and ⑤ are showing the name stored in the corresponding phonebook entry.
 - ◆ Additionally, the display ③ shows the phone number of the active party.

If the transmitted phone numbers are not stored in the phonebook, the displays ② and ⑤ are showing the phone numbers and the display ③ is empty.

If no phone numbers are transmitted, the displays ② and ⑤ are showing Unknown and the display ③ is empty.


- ▶ **Option 1:** Select the menu item Swap Calls.
- ▶ **Option 2:** Briefly press the  button on the steering wheel.

In both cases, the previously active call is now on hold and the previously call on hold is now active. The displays ②, ③ and ⑤ change accordingly.

Ending the active call

- i** Ending the active call activates the previously call on hold, which can then also be ended.



- ① End Call menu item
- ▶ **Option 1:** In the call display, select the menu item End Call.
- ▶ **Option 2:** Press and hold the  button on the steering wheel until the call is ended.

Phonebook

i For information on general system operation, please refer to the chapter “Functional introduction” from page 17.

General information

For each paired mobile phone, the Driver Information System is able to download the phonebook data into its internal memory. In order to download the phonebook data, the mobile phone must be equipped with **Bluetooth® wireless technology** and with **Bluetooth®** phonebook access profile (PBAP).

Each paired mobile phone has its own phonebook stored in the internal memory of the system, but only the phonebook of the currently connected mobile phone can be accessed.

Each phonebook holds a maximum of 1000 entries. Each entry can contain a name and up to three phone numbers.

Deleting the pairing of a mobile phone deletes also the corresponding phonebook data stored in the internal memory of the system, see sections “Deleting a pairing” on page 164 and “Deleting all pairings” on page 165.

Calling up the phonebook

- ▶ Open the PHONE main menu, see the section “Opening the PHONE main menu” on page 152.
- ▶ In the PHONE main menu, select the menu item Phone Book.

The phonebook appears in the form of a list.

i You will find an operating example for a list in the section “Lists” on page 29 of the chapter “Functional introduction”. There you will also find the description of how to scroll through a list.



- ① PHONE main menu
- ② Total number of phonebook entries
- ③ Phonebook
- ④ Menu item Phone Book

The following functions are now available:

- ◆ Downloading the phonebook, see page 189
- ◆ Creating a new entry, see page 190
- ◆ Editing an entry, see page 192
- ◆ Searching for an entry, see page 194
- ◆ Displaying details on an entry, see page 199
- ◆ Initiating a call to an entry, see page 196
- ◆ Deleting phonebook entries, see page 198

Downloading the phonebook

i Downloading the phonebook is only possible if a mobile phone is connected with the system. During downloading, each downloaded entry will be compared with entries already existing in the corresponding phonebook stored in the internal memory of the system. If the name of an entry being downloaded is identical with the name of an entry already existing, the entry already existing will be overwritten.

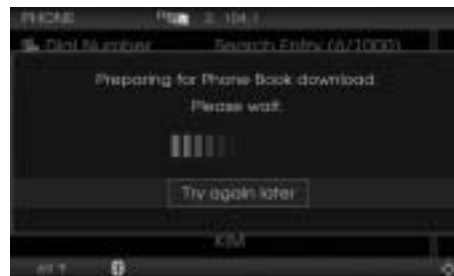
- ▶ Call up the phonebook, see section “Calling up the phonebook” on page 188.



- ① Phonebook
- ② Menu item Download Phone Book

- ▶ In the phonebook, select the menu item Download Phone Book.

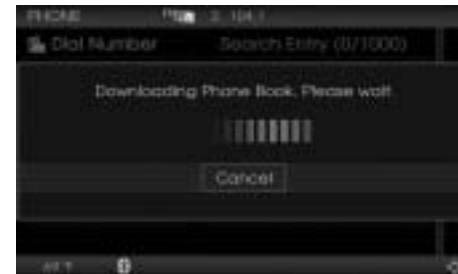
If the download preparation has not been finished already, you will see an appropriate message.




If the connected mobile phone does not support the phonebook access profile (PBAP), you will see an appropriate message.



If the download preparation has been finished already, the download starts immediately. You will see an appropriate message.




Phonebook

- ▶ **To cancel the download:** Press the controller .

After the download has been finished, the message disappears automatically.

If the limit of 1000 entries is reached during the download process, you will see an appropriate message.

- ▶ **To close the message:** Press the controller .

Creating a new entry

- i** You can also save entries in the call history list as new phonebook entries, see the section “Saving a list entry to the phonebook” on page 178.
- ▶ Call up the phonebook, see the section “Calling up the phonebook” on page 188.
The phonebook appears in the form of a list.
- i** You will find an operating example for a list in the section “Lists” on page 29 of the chapter “Functional introduction”. There you will also find the description of how to scroll through a list.



- ① Phonebook
- ② Menu item New Entry

- ▶ In the phonebook, select the menu item New Entry.

- i** The phonebook for each paired mobile phone holds a maximum of 1000 entries. The menu item New Entry cannot be selected if the phonebook is full.

The name input menu appears. You can now enter the name.

Name input menu



- ① Input field with characters already entered
- ② Currently highlighted character
- ③ Speller
- ④ Complete entry
- ⑤ Delete all characters in the input field
- ①
- ⑥ Delete the last character in the input field
- ①
- ⑦ Enter space
- ⑧ Switch character set
- ⑨ Enlarged display of the currently highlighted character in the speller
- ③
- i** At the beginning, the input field ① is empty.

The input menu has two user-control areas:
The area with the speller ③ and the area with the menu items ④ and ⑤.

- ▶ **To move from one area to another:**
Push ↑ ↓ the controller ②.

Entering a name

i You can enter a maximum of 50 characters for a name.

- ▶ **To enter a character:** In the speller, highlight a character by turning ⏪ ⏩ the controller ② and press the controller ②.

The character is entered and appears in the input field ①.

- ▶ **To switch character set:** In the speller, select one of the menu items ⑧.

The corresponding character set appears in the speller.

- ▶ **To delete the last character in the input field:** In the speller, select the menu item ⑥.

The last character entered is deleted.

- ▶ **To delete all characters in the input field:** From the speller, push ↓ the controller ② and select the menu item Delete All.

The complete entry is deleted.

- ▶ **To make a new entry:** Push ↑ the controller ② to move back to the speller and enter characters as described previously.

- ▶ **To confirm an entry:** From the speller, push ↓ the controller ② and select the menu item OK.

If the phonebook already contains an entry with the name entered, you will see an appropriate message.

- ▶ **To close the display:** Press the controller ②.

- ▶ **To correct an entry:** Proceed as described above.

If the phonebook do not yet contain an entry with the name entered, you will see the data field menu.

Data field menu



- ① Name data field
- ② Data already entered
- ③ Home phone number data field
- ④ Work phone number data field
- ⑤ Mobile phone number data field
- ⑥ Default phone number

i If you initiate a call to a phonebook entry which contains more than one phone number, the system uses the default phone number for this. Please see the section “Setting the default phone number” on page 193 to find out how to set the default phone number.

PHONE

Phonebook

Editing or entering the name

- ▶ In the data field menu, select the name data field ①.
The name input menu appears.
- ▶ Continue as described in the section “Name input menu”, see page 190.

Editing or entering phone numbers

- ▶ In the data field menu, select one of the phone number data fields ③ - ⑥.
The phone number input menu appears.
- ▶ Continue as described in the section “Name input menu”, see page 190.

i The phone number input menu is similar to the name input menu. In the phone number input menu, only digits can be entered. You can enter a maximum of 20 digits.

Closing the data field menu



- ▶ Briefly press the **BACK** button.

Scrolling through the phonebook

- ▶ Call up the phonebook, see the section “Calling up the phonebook” on page 188.
The phonebook appears in the form of a list.



① Phonebook

- ▶ Scroll through the phonebook by turning  the controller .

i A further scroll option is available. You will find an operating example in the section “Lists” on page 29 of the chapter “Functional introduction”.

Editing an entry

Calling up the phonebook

- ▶ Call up the phonebook, see the section “Calling up the phonebook” on page 188.

The phonebook appears in the form of a list.

i You will find an operating example for a list in the section “Lists” on page 29 of the chapter “Functional introduction”. There you will also find the description of how to scroll through a list.



① Phonebook

Editing the desired entry

- ▶ Highlight the desired entry in the phonebook.
- ▶ Push \rightarrow the controller \odot .
The Options menu appears.



- ① Menu item Edit
- ② Options menu
- ▶ In the Options menu, select the menu item Edit.
A selection list appears.



- ① Selection list
- ▶ Select the name or a phone number.
Either the name or the phone number input menu appears.
- ▶ In both cases, continue as described in the section “Name input menu”, see page 190.
- i** The phone number input menu is similar to the name input menu. In the phone number input menu, only digits can be entered. You can enter a maximum of 20 digits.

Setting the default phone number

- i** If you initiate a call to a phonebook entry which contains more than one phone number, the system uses the default phone number for this.
- ▶ Highlight the phonebook entry you wish to set as the default phone number.
- ▶ Push \rightarrow the controller \odot once.
The Options menu appears.



- ① Menu item Edit
- ② Options menu
- ▶ In the Options menu, select the menu item Edit.
A selection list appears.

Phonebook



- ① Selection list
- ② Currently default number
- ③ Menu item Default Number

- ▶ Highlight the menu item Default Number.
- ▶ Push \rightarrow the controller \odot once.
A selection menu appears.



- ① Icon \odot for currently active setting

- ▶ Select the desired phone number category.

If the selected phone number category contains a phone number, the selection will be stored and the selection menu disappears automatically.

If the selected phone number category contains no phone number, you will see the message Selected phone number is not available. Please enter the phone number first.. The message disappears after a short time.

Searching for an entry

Calling up the phonebook

- ▶ Call up the phonebook, see the section “Calling up the phonebook” on page 188.



- ① Phonebook

- ▶ In the phonebook, select the menu item Search Entry.

- i** The menu item Search Entry cannot be selected if the phonebook does not contain any entries.

A selection menu appears.



- ① Search by Name menu item
- ② Search by Number menu item
- ③ Selection menu

- ▶ In the selection menu, select the menu item Search by Name or Search by Number.

Either the name or the number input menu appears, depending on the menu item selected.

Input menu

- i** The following illustration and the descriptions refer to the name input menu and entering a name. The number input menu and entering a number are similar.



- ① Input field with characters already entered
- ② Currently highlighted character
- ③ Predictive speller
- ④ Confirm entry
- ⑤ Delete all characters in the input field
- ①
- ⑥ Delete the last character in the input field
- ①
- ⑦ Enter space
- ⑧ Switch character set
- ⑨ Enlarged display of the currently highlighted character in the predictive speller
- ③
- ⑩ List of hits

- i** At the beginning, the input field ① is empty.

The input menu has two user-control areas: The area with the predictive speller ③ and the area with the menu items ④ and ⑤.

- ▶ **To move from one area to another:**
Push **↑ ↓** the controller **⊙**.

Entering a name

- ▶ **To enter a character:** In the predictive speller, highlight a character by turning **⤵ ⤴** the controller **⊙** and press the controller **⊙**.

- i** Not all of the characters displayed can be highlighted in the predictive speller. The characters that can be highlighted depend on those already entered and the data for the phonebook.

The character is entered and appears in the input field ①.

The list of hits ⑩ is adapted accordingly each time you enter a character. It shows the entries matching the entered characters.

Phonebook

- ▶ **To switch character set:** In the predictive speller, select one of the menu items ⑧.

The corresponding character set appears in the predictive speller.

- ▶ **To delete the last character in the input field:** In the predictive speller, select the menu item ⑥.

The last character entered is deleted.

- ▶ **To delete all characters in the input field:** From the predictive speller, push ↓ the controller ③ and select the menu item Delete All.

All characters are deleted.

- ▶ **To make a new entry:** Push ↑ the controller ③ to move back to the predictive speller and enter characters as described previously.

Confirming the entry

- ▶ From the predictive speller, push ↓ the controller ③ and select the menu item OK.

A selection list with one or more entries containing the entered characters is displayed.



① Selection list

The following functions are now available:

- ◆ Initiating a call to an entry, see section “Option 1” on page 196 or section “Option 2” on page 197.
- ◆ Editing the desired entry, see page 193
- ◆ Deleting entries, see page 198
- ◆ Displaying details on the desired entry, see page 199

Initiating a call to an entry

- ▶ Call up the phonebook, see the section “Calling up the phonebook” on page 188.



① Phonebook



Option 1

- ▶ Select the desired entry.

If the entry contains only one number, the system initiates the call to this number.

If the entry contains more than one number, the system initiates the call to the default number.

- ❗ Please see the section “Setting the default phone number” on page 193 to find out how to set the default phone number.



- ▶ **To cancel the call before the other party answers:** Press the controller  or press and hold the  button on the steering wheel.

The call is cancelled.

If the other party answers, the call is active and you conduct the call over the hands-free unit.

- i** Please see the section “Functions during a call” on page 181 for a description of the functions available during a call.

Option 2

- ▶ Highlight the desired entry.
- ▶ Push  the controller  once.
The Options menu appears.





- ① Menu item Call
- ② Options menu

- ▶ In the Options menu, select the menu item Call.

If the entry contains only one number

After selecting the menu item Call in the Options menu, the system initiates the call to this number immediately.

- ▶ **To cancel the call before the other party answers:** Press the controller  or press and hold the  button on the steering wheel.

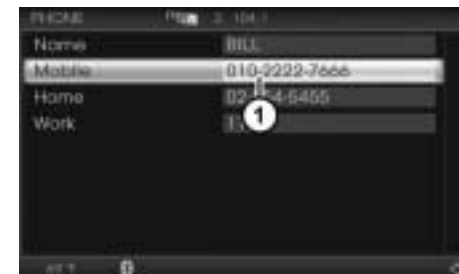
The call is cancelled.

If the other party answers, the call is active and you conduct the call over the hands-free unit.

- i** Please see the section “Functions during a call” on page 181 for a description of the functions available during a call.

If the entry contains more than one number

After selecting the menu item Call in the Options menu, a selection list appears.





- ① Highlighted default phone number



The default phone number is automatically highlighted.

Phonebook

i Please see the section “Setting the default phone number” on page 193 to find out how to set the default phone number.

- ▶ **To initiate the call to the default phone number:** Press the controller .
- ▶ **To initiate the call to another number:** Highlight another number and press the controller .

In both cases, the system initiates the call to the corresponding phone number.

- ▶ **To cancel the call before the other party answers:** Press the controller  or press and hold the  button on the steering wheel.

The call is cancelled.

If the other party answers, the call is active and you conduct the call over the hands-free unit.

i Please see the section “Functions during a call” on page 181 for a description of the functions available during a call.

Deleting phonebook entries

Calling up the phonebook

- ▶ Call up the phonebook, see the section “Calling up the phonebook” on page 188.



The phonebook appears in the form of a list.

i You will find an operating example for a list in the section “Lists” on page 29 of the chapter “Functional introduction”. There you will also find the description of how to scroll through a list.



① Phonebook

Deleting entries

- ▶ **To delete all entries:** Highlight any entry you like.
- ▶ **To delete an individual entry:** Highlight the desired entry.
- ▶ After highlighting, push  the controller .

The Options menu appears.



- ① Options menu
- ② Menu item Delete
- ③ Menu item Delete All

- ▶ In the Options menu, select the menu item Delete All or Delete.

Depending on the menu item selected, you will be prompted to confirm that you wish to delete all entries or to delete the highlighted entry.

- ▶ Select Yes or No.

Depending on the menu item and the answer selected, all entries will be deleted or retained, or the highlighted entry will be deleted or retained.

Displaying details on an entry

Calling up the phonebook

- ▶ Call up the phonebook, see the section “Calling up the phonebook” on page 188.

The phonebook appears in the form of a list.

- i** You will find an operating example for a list in the section “Lists” on page 29 of the chapter “Functional introduction”. There you will also find the description of how to scroll through a list.



① Phonebook

Displaying details on the desired entry

- ▶ Highlight the desired entry.
 - ▶ Push \rightarrow the controller \odot .
- The Options menu appears.



① Options menu
② Menu item Details

- ▶ In the Options menu, select the menu item Details.

The details screen appears.



① Name of the phonebook entry
② Mobile phone number
③ Home phone number
④ Work phone number

- ▶ **To close the details screen:** Press the controller \odot .

PHONE

Phonebook

General information 202

Basic functions 204

Navigation main menu 209

Entering destinations 210

Functions after entering the destination. 230

Route guidance 235

Functions during route guidance 237

Functions independent of route guidance 243

Saving/deleting destinations in the Adress Book . 247

Editing Address Book entries 254

Settings 258

Safety instructions



WARNING

Due to changes in traffic conditions, the navigation system may guide you to impassable route.

During driving, always pay attention to the traffic condition.

Operations such as adding mark points and searching POIs may distract you from the traffic situation, thus increasing the accident hazard.

Perform these operations only when the vehicle is stationary.



WARNING

If you use the navigation system, the following factors may increase the accident hazard:

- ◆ Distraction from the traffic situation.
- ◆ Failure to observe traffic signs, traffic regulations and road safety facilities.
- ◆ Inappropriate audible driving recommendations or route guidance displays as a result of the real world not matching the data on the digital map, for example road works or modified road routing.

Therefore, always comply with the following:

- ◆ Only enter a navigation destination when the vehicle is stationary.
- ◆ Always observe traffic signs, traffic regulations and road safety facilities. They always have priority over the audible driving recommendations or route guidance displays by the system.

Digital map

The data for the digital map will become obsolete, just like conventional road maps. Optimum route guidance is only achieved with up-to-date map software. Information on new map software versions is available from your Hyundai service center.

GPS reception

The navigation system uses the Global Positioning System (GPS). The correct functioning of the navigation system is dependent on the GPS reception.

In certain situations, GPS reception may be impaired, distorted or even impossible, for example in tunnels, multi-storey car parks or due to snow on the GPS antenna. The system will show you whether or not the GPS reception is sufficient, see the section "Calling up the map display and switching to Navigation mode" on page 204.

Route guidance after vehicle transport

After vehicle transport (e.g. by ferry, car train or by towing), the navigation system no longer knows the correct vehicle position. The system therefore needs to re-determine its position.

Positioning is performed automatically. The actual length of time may vary from case to case.

During positioning, route guidance is subject to the following restrictions:

- ◆ Audible driving recommendations, route guidance displays and displayed data do not match the actual location.
- ◆ The system does not output audible driving recommendations.

Once positioning is complete, route guidance continues as usual with appropriate audible driving recommendations and route guidance displays.

Basic functions

i For information on general system operation, please refer to the chapter “Functional introduction” from page 17.

Calling up the map display and switching to Navigation mode

► Press the **MAP GUIDE** button.

The map display showing the current vehicle position and further information appears.



Map display shows day mode

- ① Currently set map orientation
- ② Current set map scale
- ③ Remaining distance/journey time to destination
- ④ Current vehicle position
- ⑤ Route
- ⑥ Outside temperature


- ⑦ Voice control system is active
- ⑧ XM NavTraffic® information available


You can switch the map orientation, see the section “North up view/Heading up view” on page 265.

You can set the map scale, see the section “Moving the map/setting the map scale” on page 206.

The display ③ only appears when route guidance is active. You can switch the display ③ between displaying the data for the next waypoint or for the main destination, see the section “Switching the remaining distance/journey time display” on page 239.

The route ⑤ only appears if a route guidance is active.

The icon  shown in the display ⑦ only appears if the voice control system is activate, see the section “Activating voice control” on page 269.

If the audible driving recommendations are deactivated, the display ⑦ will show the icon .

The display ⑧ only appears if XM NavTraffic® information are available.

For further information about XM NavTraffic® information please refer to section “Traffic information” on page 245.








Position/scroll mode within the map display

If you call up the map display as previously described, position mode is automatically set.

In position mode, you always see the current vehicle position.

In scroll mode, you see a crosshairs on the map and you can move (scroll) the map.

Switching mode

► **To switch from position mode to scroll mode:** Push the controller  in any direction (     ).

The crosshairs appear and you can move the map, see the section “Moving the map/setting the map scale” on page 206.



Map display shows night mode

- ① Information on the crosshairs position
- ② Crosshairs
- ③ Current vehicle position
- ④ Distance and direction from the vehicle position to the crosshairs position in a straight line

- ▶ **To switch from scroll mode to position mode:** Press the **MAP GUIDE** button.

The crosshairs disappear and the map is automatically set to the current vehicle position.

- i** If you have moved the map, you can quickly move the map to the vehicle position using this function.

If you press the **MAP GUIDE** button while route guidance is active, you will also hear a current audible driving recommendation.

Options in position/scroll mode

- i** Different options are available in the Options menu depending on whether position mode or scroll mode is set.

Opening the Options menu

- ▶ In the map display, press the controller **○**.

The Options menu appears. The options available in the respective mode are described in the following sections.

- ▶ **To close the Options menu:** Briefly press the **BACK** button.

Options in position and scroll mode

The following options are available in position and scroll modes:

- ◆ Traffic information, see page 245
- ◆ “North up view/Heading up view”, see page 265
- ◆ Entering a POI destination via a vicinity search, see page 224

Options in scroll mode only

The following options are available in scroll mode:

- ◆ Saving the crosshairs position as a destination in the address book category Address List, see the section “Option 2 (only for the category Address List)” on page 248
- ◆ Setting the center point of the crosshairs as the destination, see the section “Set/replace destination” on page 230
- ◆ Adding the center point of the crosshairs as the waypoint, see the section “Add waypoint” on page 230
- ◆ Initiating a phone call to a POI, see the section “Initiating a phone call to a POI” on page 244

- i** POIs (points of interest) include gas stations, restaurants and banks, for example. This function is only available if the center point of the crosshairs is indicating a POI.

Navigation

Basic functions

Options in position mode only

The following options are available in position mode:

- ◆ Suspending route guidance, see page 237

i This function is only available during route guidance.

- ◆ Resuming route guidance, see page 237

i This function is only available if route guidance was previously interrupted.

- ◆ Reroute/detour, see page 238
- ◆ Activating/deactivating audible driving recommendations, see page 207
- ◆ Map mode, see page 265
- ◆ Switching the remaining distance/ journey time display, see page 239

Information on the current vehicle position

- ▶ Press the **MAP GUIDE** button.

You will see an information display on the current vehicle position at the top of the display, if the digital map contains corresponding data.

The display disappears automatically after a short time.



Map display shows night mode

- ① Information display

Moving the map/setting the map scale

i It is no longer possible to gradually move the map as soon as the vehicle exceeds a certain speed. It becomes possible to gradually move the map again as soon as the vehicle falls below a certain speed.

i If you move the map while the vehicle is stationary, then the rate at which the map moves will increase the longer you press and hold the controller **○**.













- ▶ **To activate scroll mode:** Push the controller **○** in any direction (**↑ ↓ ← → ↻ ↺**).

If the map was previously in position mode, it will switch to scroll mode and you will see a crosshairs.




Map display shows night mode

- ① Information on the crosshairs position
- ② Crosshairs
- ③ Current vehicle position
- ④ Distance and direction from the vehicle position to the crosshairs position in a straight line
- ⑤ Currently set map scale

- ▶ **To move the map:** Push and hold the controller  in any direction (       ).
The map moves accordingly.
- ▶ **To set the map scale:** Turn  the controller  until the desired scale is reached.
- ▶ **To quickly set the map to the vehicle position:** Press the  button.
The crosshairs disappear. The map is automatically set to the current vehicle position and is in position mode.

Guidance volume settings

Setting the volume of the audible driving recommendations




-  The volume can also be set during an audible driving recommendation, see the section "Functional introduction", section "Setting the volume" on page 33.

Opening the Settings menu



- ▶ **To open the Navigation main menu:** Press the  button.

- ▶ In the Navigation main menu, select the menu item Settings.
The Settings menu appears.






Setting the volume

- ▶ In the Settings menu, select the menu item Guidance Volume.
A selection menu appears.
- ▶ In the selection menu, select the menu item Adjust Volume.
The volume scale appears.
- ▶ Turn  the controller  until the desired setting is reached.
The system saves this setting automatically.
- ▶ **To close the menu:** Press the  button.

Activating/deactivating audible driving recommendations


-  If audible driving recommendations are deactivated, you will see the  icon on the left-hand side of the map display.
The icon will also be visible in the bottom status line, if the status line is displayed.

Option 1

- ▶ **To call up the map display in position mode:** Press the  button.
The map display appears.
- ▶ **To open the Options menu:** Press the controller .
The Options menu appears.
- ▶ **To activate/deactivate:** In the Options menu, select the menu item Voice Guidance Off or Voice Guidance On.
The text of the menu item and the icon to the left of the menu item change accordingly, both always show the current status.
 - ◆ Icon  = Voice guidance switched on
 - ◆ Icon  = Voice guidance switched off
- ▶ **To close the Options menu:** Press the  button.

Basic functions



Option 2

- ▶ **To open the Settings menu:** Press the  button.
The Navigation main menu appears.
- ▶ In the Navigation main menu, select the menu item Settings.
The Settings menu appears.
- ▶ **To activate/deactivate:** In the Settings menu, select the menu item Mute Guidance.

Depending on the previous status, the audible driving recommendations will be activated or deactivated. The status display to the left of the menu item changes accordingly.

- ◆ Display = function activated
- ◆ Display = function deactivated

Calling up a current audible driving recommendation

-  If you did not understand an audible driving recommendation, you can call up a current driving recommendation at any time.
- ▶ Press the  button.
You will hear a current audible driving recommendation. The display will simultaneously switch to the map display, if it was previously showing a different display.

i For information on general system operation, please refer to the chapter “Functional introduction” from page 17.

Opening the Navigation main menu

► Press the **NAVI MENU** button.

The Navigation main menu appears.



- ① Navigation main menu
- ② Highlighted menu item
- ③ Submenu items of the highlighted menu item

You can access the following menu items in the Navigation main menu:

- ◆ Destination, see the section “Entering destinations” on page 210
- ◆ Show Route, see the section “Show route” on page 237
- i** The menu item Show Route is only available when route guidance is active.
- ◆ Change Route, see the section “Change route” on page 239
- i** The menu item Change Route is only available if a destination has been entered.
- ◆ Edit Addr. Book see the section “Editing Address Book entries” on page 254
- ◆ Settings, see the section “Settings” on page 258

Navigation

Entering destinations

- i** For information on general system operation, please refer to the chapter “Functional introduction” from page 17.
- i** When entering a destination, you can only enter the data stored in the digital map.

Available options

The following options are available for entering a destination:

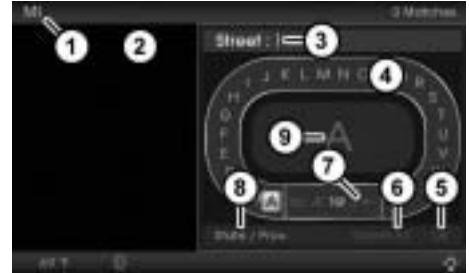
- ◆ Entering a destination via the address, see page 210
- ◆ Entering a destination via the Previous Destinations, see page 215
- ◆ Entering a destination via Intersection input, see page 215
- ◆ Entering a POI destination via POI name, see page 216
- ◆ Entering a POI destination via POI category, see page 220
- ◆ Entering a POI destination via POI phone number, see page 223
- ◆ Entering a POI destination via a vicinity search, see page 224

- ◆ Entering a destination via the Address Book, see page 227
- ◆ Entering an emergency destination, see page 228
- ◆ Entering a destination via the map, see page 229

Entering a destination via the address

Opening the address input menu

- ▶ Open the Navigation main menu, see section “Opening the Navigation main menu” on page 209.
- ▶ In the Navigation main menu, select the menu item **Destination**.
A selection list appears.
- ▶ In the selection list, select the item **Address**.
The address input menu appears.



- ① Input progress display (in the example currently entered state/province)
- ② Hit list (empty if no address has been entered)
- ③ Input field
- ④ Predictive speller
- ⑤ Confirm entry
- ⑥ Delete all characters in the input field
- ⑦ Delete the last character in the input field
- ⑧ Menu item for entering the state/province
- ⑨ Enlarged display of the currently highlighted character in the predictive speller

Entering destinations

Now you have the following options:

- ◆ Entering a state/province, see section “Entering a state/province” on page 211
- ◆ Entering a street, see section “Entering a street” on page 212.
- i** Before entering a street, make sure that the correct state/province has been entered before.
- ◆ After entering a street, entering a city, see section “Entering a city” on page 213.
- ◆ After entering a street or city, entering a house number, see section “Entering a house number” on page 214.

Entering a state/province

- ▶ Open the address input menu, see section “Opening the address input menu” on page 210.
- ▶ In the address input menu, push ↓ the controller (⊙) and select the menu item State/Prov..

Now you can enter the state/province.



- ① Hit list
- ② Currently highlighted character
- ③ Input field
- ④ Number of hits in the hit list ①
- ⑤ Predictive speller
- ⑥ Confirm entry
- ⑦ Delete all characters in the input field ③
- ⑧ Delete the last character in the input field ③
- ⑨ Enlarged display of the currently highlighted character in the predictive speller ⑤

Entering/deleting characters

- ▶ **To enter a character:** In the predictive speller ⑤, highlight a character and press the controller (⊙).

The character is entered and appears in the input field ③.

- i** Not all of the characters displayed can be highlighted in the predictive speller ⑤. The characters that can be highlighted depend on those already entered.

Before any character is entered, the hit list ① shows all states/provinces. Each time you enter a character, the hit list is narrowed down in accordance with the characters already entered. As soon as the entry is unambiguous, the hit list contains just one entry. Once you reach this stage you cannot enter any further characters, you can only complete the entry.

- ▶ **To delete the last character in the input field ③:** Select the menu item ⑧.

The last character entered is deleted.

Navigation

Entering destinations

- ▶ **To delete all characters in the input field ③:** Push ↓ the controller Ⓒ and select the menu item Delete All.

All characters are deleted.

- ▶ **To make a new entry:** Push ↑ the controller Ⓒ to move back to the predictive speller and enter characters as described previously.

Completing entry

- ▶ **Option 1:** Keep entering characters until the menu item OK is automatically highlighted, then press the controller Ⓒ.

The entry of the state/province is complete. You can enter the desired street, see below.

- ▶ **Option 2:** Push ← the controller Ⓒ.
- ▶ **Option 3:** After entering at least one character, push ↓ the controller Ⓒ and select the menu item OK manually.

After choosing option 2 or 3, the hit list is now active.

- ▶ Select an entry in the hit ① list.
The entry of the state/province is complete. You can enter the desired street.

Entering a street

- i** Before entering a street, make sure that the correct state/province has been entered, see section “Entering a state/province” on page 211.

- ▶ Open the address input menu, see section “Opening the address input menu” on page 210.



- ① Input progress display
- ② Hit list
- ③ Input field
- ④ Currently highlighted character

- ⑤ Number of hits in the hit list ②
- ⑥ Predictive speller
- ⑦ Confirm entry
- ⑧ Delete all characters in the input field ③
- ⑨ Delete the last character in the input field ③
- ⑩ Enlarged display of the currently highlighted character in the predictive speller ⑥

Entering/deleting characters

- ▶ **To enter a character:** In the predictive speller ⑥, highlight a character and press the controller Ⓒ.

The character is entered and appears in the input field ③.

- i** Not all of the characters displayed can be highlighted in the predictive speller ⑥. The characters that can be highlighted depend on those already entered and the data for the digital map.

Before any character is entered, the hit list ② is empty. Each time you enter a character, the hit list is narrowed down in accordance with the characters already entered.

Entering destinations

As soon as the entry is unambiguous, the hit list contains just one entry. Once you reach this stage you cannot enter any further characters, you can only complete entry.

- ▶ **To delete the last character in the input field** ③: Select the menu item ③.

The last character entered is deleted.

- ▶ **To delete all characters in the input field** ③: Push ↓ the controller ③ and select the menu item Delete All.

All characters are deleted.

- ▶ **To make a new entry:** Push ↑ the controller ③ to move back to the predictive speller and enter characters as described previously.

Completing entry

- ▶ **Option 1:** Keep entering characters until the menu item OK is automatically highlighted, then press the controller ③.

The entry of the street is complete.

If there is only one city matching to the street, you can enter a house number, see section “Entering a house number” on page 214.

If there are several towns/cities matching to the street, you can enter a city, see section “Entering a city” on page 213.

- ▶ **Option 2:** Push ← the controller ③.
- ▶ **Option 3:** After entering at least one character, push ↓ the controller ③ and select the menu item OK.

After choosing option 2 or 3, the hit list ② is now active.

- ▶ Select an entry in the hit list.

In both cases, entry of the street is complete.

If there is only one city matching to the street, you can enter a house number, see section “Entering a house number” on page 214.

If there are several towns/cities matching to the street, you can enter a city, see section “Entering a city” on page 213.

Entering a city

- ▶ **i** Before entering a city, you must enter a street, see section “Entering a street” on page 212.



- ① Input progress display
- ② Number of hits in the hit list ③
- ③ Hit list of towns/cities matching to the already entered street

- ▶ **To enter a city:** Proceed as previously when entering a street, see section “Entering a street” on page 212.

If house numbers for the entered street are available, you can enter a house number, see section “Entering a house number” on page 214.

Navigation

Entering destinations

If no house numbers are available for the entered street, entry of the destination is complete and you see the corresponding destination on the map. Further options are now available, see the section “Options after entering the destination” on page 230.

Entering a house number

i Before entering a house number, you must enter a city, see section “Entering a city” on page 213.

If there are two or more house number ranges available for the entered street, you can select a house number range, see section “Selecting a house number” on page 214.

If there is only one house number range available for the entered street, you can enter the house number, see section “Entering a house number” on page 214.

Selecting a house number

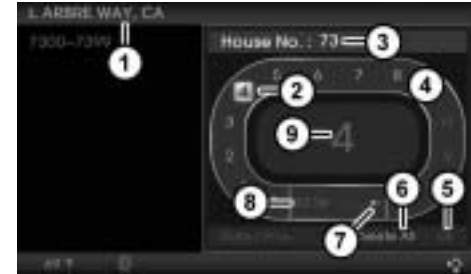


- ① Input progress display
- ② List of house number ranges

► Select the desired house number range.

Now you can enter a house number.

Entering a house number



- ① Input progress display
- ② Currently highlighted character
- ③ Input field
- ④ Predictive speller
- ⑤ Confirm entry
- ⑥ Delete all characters in the input field
- ③
- ⑦ Delete the last character in the input field
- ③
- ⑧ Switch character set
- ⑨ Enlarged display of the currently highlighted character in the predictive speller
- ④

Entering destinations

- ▶ **To enter a character:** In the predictive speller ④, highlight a character and press the controller ⑤.

The character is entered and appears in the input field ③.

- ▶ **To delete the last character in the input field ③:** Select the menu item ⑦.

The last character entered is deleted.

- ▶ **To delete all characters in the input field ③:** Push ↓ the controller ⑤ and select the menu item Delete All.

All characters are deleted.

- ▶ **To make a new entry:** Push ↑ the controller ⑤ to move back to the predictive speller and enter characters as described previously.

- ▶ **To complete the entry:** Push ↓ the controller ⑤ and select the menu item OK.

Entry of the destination is complete and you see the corresponding destination on the map. Further options are now available, see the section “Options after entering the destination” on page 230.

Entering a destination via the Previous Destinations

- ▶ Open the Navigation main menu, see section “Opening the Navigation main menu” on page 209.
- ▶ In the Navigation main menu, select the menu item Destination.
A selection list appears.
- ▶ In the selection list, select the menu item Previous Destinations.

- ▶ **i** The menu item Previous Destinations can only be selected if at least one route guidance to a destination has been started previously.

After selecting the menu item, you will see a list of the recent destinations for which a route guidance session has been started previously. This list contains automatically a maximum of 40 previous destinations and, at the top of the list, the last previous start point.

- ▶ **To select a destination:** Select a list entry.

Entry of the destination is complete and you see the corresponding destination on the map. Further options are now available, see the section “Options after entering the destination” on page 230.

Entering a destination via Intersection input

- ▶ **i** Before entering a destination via Intersection input, make sure that the correct state/province has been entered, see section “Entering a state/province” on page 211.
- ▶ Open the Navigation main menu, see section “Opening the Navigation main menu” on page 209.
- ▶ In the Navigation main menu, select the menu item Destination.
A selection list appears.

Entering destinations

- ▶ In selection list, select the menu item Intersection.

Now you can enter the first street.

- ▶ **To enter the first street:** Proceed as previously when entering a street, see section “Entering a street” on page 212.

After entering the first street, you can enter the second street.

- ▶ **To enter the second street:** Proceed as previously when entering a street, see section “Entering a street” on page 212.

If the intersection is unambiguous, entry of the destination is complete and you see the corresponding destination on the map. Further options are now available, see the section “Options after entering the destination” on page 230.

If the intersection is ambiguous, you must enter the city.

- ▶ **To enter the city:** Proceed as previously described in section “Entering a city” on page 213.

After entering the city, entry of the destination is complete and you see the corresponding destination on the map. Further options are now available, see the section “Options after entering the destination” on page 230.

Entering a POI destination via POI name

Opening the POI name input menu

- ▶ Open the Navigation main menu, see section “Opening the Navigation main menu” on page 209.
- ▶ In the Navigation main menu, select the menu item Destination.

A selection list appears.

- ▶ In the selection list, select the menu item Point of Interest.

The POI main menu appears.



① POI main menu

- ▶ In the POI main menu, select the menu item Name.

The POI name input menu appears.

Entering destinations



- ① Input progress display (in the example currently entered state/province)
- ② Hit list (empty if no name has been entered)
- ③ Input field
- ④ Predictive spinner
- ⑤ Menu item for setting a category/city filter
- ⑥ Delete all characters in the input field
- ⑦ Delete the last character in the input field
- ⑧ Menu item for entering the state/province
- ⑨ Enlarged display of the highlighted character in the predictive spinner

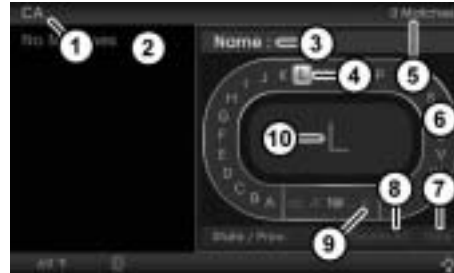
i Before entering a POI name, make sure that the correct state/province has been entered, see section below.

Entering a state/province

- ▶ In the POI name input menu, Push ↓ the controller (⊙), select the menu item State/Prov. and proceed as previously described in the section “Entering a state/province” on page 211.

After entering the state/province, the POI name input menu appears again. Now you can enter a POI name.

Entering a POI name



- ① Input progress display (in the example currently entered state/province)
- ② Hit list (empty if no name has been entered)
- ③ Input field
- ④ Currently highlighted character
- ⑤ Number of hits in the hit list
- ⑥ Predictive spinner

- ⑦ Menu item for setting a category/city filter
- ⑧ Delete all characters in the input field
- ⑨ Delete the last character in the input field
- ⑩ Enlarged display of the currently highlighted character in the predictive spinner

- ▶ **To enter a character:** In the predictive spinner (⑥), highlight a character and press the controller (⊙).

The character is entered and appears in the input field (③).

- i** Not all of the characters displayed can be highlighted in the predictive spinner (⑥). The characters that can be highlighted depend on those already entered and the data for the digital map.

Before any character is entered, the hit list (②) is empty. Each time you enter a character, the hit list is narrowed down in accordance with the characters already entered.

Navigation

Entering destinations

As soon as the entry is unambiguous, the hit list contains just one entry. Once you reach this stage you cannot enter any further characters, you can only complete the entry.

- ▶ **To delete the last character in the input field** ③: Select the menu item ③.

The last character entered is deleted.

- ▶ **To delete all characters in the input field** ③: Push ↓ the controller ③ and select the menu item Delete All.

All characters are deleted.

- ▶ **To make a new entry:** Push ↑ the controller ③ to move back to the predictive speller and enter characters as described previously.

- ▶ **To complete the entry:** Push ← the controller ③.

You will see the POI list.



- ① POI list
- ② POI with sub entries (number of sub entries)

- ▶ Select an entry in the POI list.

If you have selected a POI with sub entries, you can select a sub entry.

After selecting an entry without sub entries or after selecting a sub entry, entry of the POI destination is complete and you see the corresponding destination on the map. Further options are now available, see the section “Options after entering the destination” on page 230.

Category/city filter

After entering at least one character of the POI name, you can set a category/city filter to narrow down the available POIs.

- ▶ In the name input menu, push ↓ the controller ③ and select the menu item Filter.

You will see the filter main menu.



- ① Input progress display
- ② Hit list
- ③ Currently filter status
- ④ Number of hits in the hit list ②

- ▶ **To set the category or the city filter:** Select the menu item Category or Town/City.

The menu for entering a category or a city appears.



Illustration shows the menu for entering a category as an example

- ① Hit list
- ② Menu item OK

► **To enter and delete characters:**

Proceed as previously when entering a POI name, see section “Entering a POI name” on page 217.

- **Option 1 to complete the entry:** Keep entering characters until the hit ① list contains just one entry.

The menu item OK is automatically highlighted.

- Press the controller Ⓞ.

The filter main menu appears again. You can open the POI list now, see below.

- **Option 2 to complete the entry:** Push ← the controller Ⓞ.

- **Option 3:** After entering at least one character, push ↓ the controller Ⓞ and select the menu item OK.

After choosing option 2 or 3, the hit list ① is active now.

- Select an entry in the hit list ①.

The filter main menu appears again. You can open the POI list.

- **To open the POI list:** In the filter main menu, push ← the controller Ⓞ.

The POI list appears.



- ① POI list
- ② POI with sub entries (number of sub entries)

- Select an entry in the POI list.

If you have selected a POI with sub entries, you can select a sub entry.

After selecting an entry without sub entries or after selecting a sub entry, entry of the POI destination is complete and you see the corresponding destination on the map. Further options are now available, see the section “Options after entering the destination” on page 230.

Navigation

Entering destinations

Entering a POI destination via POI category

Opening the POI category main menu

- ▶ Open the Navigation main menu, see section “Opening the Navigation main menu” on page 209.
 - ▶ In the Navigation main menu, select the menu item Destination.
- A selection list appears.
- ▶ In the selection list, select the menu item Point of Interest.

The POI main menu appears.



① POI main menu

- ▶ In the POI main menu, select the menu item Category.

The POI category main menu appears.



① POI category main menu

The following options are available:

- ◆ Selecting a category with POIs near to a particular city center, see section “POIs near to a particular city center” on page 221.
- ◆ Selecting a category with POIs along the route or near to a destination already entered or near to the current position, see the following description.

POIs along the route or near to a destination already entered or near to the current position

- ▶ Open the POI category main menu, see section “Opening the POI category main menu” on page 220.
- ▶ In the POI category main menu, select the menu item Along Route or Near Destination or Near Here.

The category input menu appears. You can enter a category name.



① Hit list

② Menu item OK

Entering destinations

- ▶ **To enter and delete characters:**
Proceed as previously when entering a POI name, see section “Entering a POI name” on page 217.

- ▶ **Option 1 to complete the entry:** Keep entering characters until the hit ① list contains just one entry.

The menu item OK is automatically highlighted.

- ▶ Press the controller Ⓞ.

The POI list appears, see illustration below.

- ▶ **Option 2 to complete the entry:**

Push ← the controller Ⓞ.

- ▶ **Option 3 to complete the entry:** After entering at least one character, push ↓ the controller Ⓞ and select the menu item OK.

After choosing option 2 or 3, the hit list ① is active now.

- ▶ Select an entry in the hit list ①.

The POI list appears.



- ① Sorting menu item
- ② Input progress display
- ③ Number of hits in the POI list ⑥
- ④ Distance to the POI
- ⑤ Direction to the POI
- ⑥ POI list

- ▶ **To sort the POI list:** Select the menu item ①.

The POI list is resorted.

The labelling of the menu item ① always shows the current sorting status. It will change with every selection.

Possible labelings:

- ◆ Sort Alphabetically
- ◆ Sort by Distance

The sorting status is also identified by the icon to the left of the menu item ①.

- ◆ Icon 📄 = List is sorted alphabetical
- ◆ Icon 📏 = List is sorted by distance

i The menu item ① cannot be selected if the list contains fewer than three entries.

- ▶ **To select a POI:** Select a list entry.

Entry of the destination is complete and you see the corresponding destination on the map. Further options are now available, see the section “Options after entering the destination” on page 230.

POIs near to a particular city center

- ▶ Open the POI category main menu, see section “Opening the POI category main menu” on page 220.

- ▶ In the POI category main menu, select the menu item Near City Center.

The city input menu appears. You can enter a city.

Entering destinations



- ① Hit list
- ② Menu item State/Prov.
- ③ Menu item OK

i Before entering a city, make sure that the correct state/province has been entered.

Entering a state/province

- ▶ Select the menu item State/Prov. and proceed as previously described, see section “Entering a state/province” on page 211.

Entering a city

- ▶ **To enter and delete characters:**
Proceed as previously when entering a POI name, see section “Entering a POI name” on page 217.
- ▶ **Option 1 to complete entering a city:**
Keep entering characters until the hit ① list contains just one entry.
The menu item OK is automatically highlighted.
- ▶ Press the controller Ⓞ.
- Now you can enter a POI category, see the corresponding section below.
- ▶ **Option 2 to complete entering a city:**
Push ← the controller Ⓞ.
- ▶ **Option 3 to complete entering a city:**
After entering at least one character, push ↓ the controller Ⓞ and select the menu item OK.
After choosing option 2 or 3, the hit list ① is active now.
- ▶ Select an entry in the hit list ①.
Now you can enter a POI category.

Entering a POI category



- ① Hit list
- ② Menu item OK

- ▶ **To enter and delete characters:**
Proceed as previously when entering a POI name, see section “Entering a POI name” on page 217.
- ▶ **Option 1 to complete the entry:** Keep entering characters until the hit ① list contains just one entry.
The menu item OK is automatically highlighted.
- ▶ Press the controller Ⓞ.
The POI list appears, see illustration below.

Entering destinations

► **Option 2 to complete the entry:**

Push ← the controller ②.

► **Option 3 to complete the entry:** After entering at least one character, push ↓ the controller ③ and select the menu item OK.

After choosing option 2 or 3, the hit list ⑤ is active now.

► Select an entry in the hit list ①.

The POI list appears.



- ① Sorting menu item
- ② Input progress display
- ③ Number of hits in the POI list ⑤
- ④ Distance to the POI
- ⑤ POI list

► **To sort the POI list:** Select the menu item ①.



The POI list is resorted.

The labelling of the menu item ① always shows the current sorting status. It will change with every selection.

Possible labelings:

- ◆ Sort Alphabetically
- ◆ Sort by Distance

The sorting status is also identified by the icon to the left of the menu item ①.

- ◆ Icon  = List is sorted alphabetical
- ◆ Icon  = List is sorted by distance

i The menu item ① cannot be selected if the list contains fewer than three entries.

► **To select a POI:** Select a list entry.

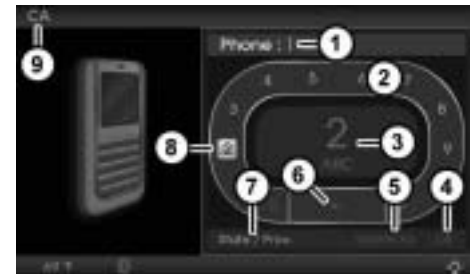
Entry of the destination is complete and you see the corresponding destination on the map. Further options are now available, see the section “Options after entering the destination” on page 230.

Entering a POI destination via POI phone number

► Open the POI category main menu, see section “Opening the POI category main menu” on page 220.

► In the POI category main menu, select the menu item Phone Number.

The phone number input menu appears.



- ① Input field
- ② Predictive speller
- ③ Enlarged display of the currently highlighted character in the predictive speller
- ④ Confirm entry

Entering destinations

- ⑤ Delete all characters in the input field
①
- ⑥ Delete the last character in the input field
①
- ⑦ Menu item for entering the state/province
- ⑧ Currently highlighted character
- ⑨ Input progress display (in the example currently entered state/province)

i Before entering a phone number, make sure that the correct state/province has been entered.

Entering a state/province

- ▶ Push ↓ the controller (⊙), select the menu item State/Prov. and proceed as previously described, see section “Entering a state/province” on page 211.

Entering a phone number

- ▶ **To enter and delete characters:**
Proceed as previously when entering a house number, see section “Entering a house number” on page 214.

- ▶ **To complete the entry:** Push ↓ the controller (⊙), select the menu item OK.

If the phone number is unambiguous, entry of the destination is complete and you see the corresponding destination on the map. Further options are now available, see the section “Options after entering the destination” on page 230.

If the phone number is ambiguous, a POI list appears.



- ▶ **To select a POI:** Select a list entry.
Entry of the destination is complete and you see the corresponding destination on the map. Further options are now available, see the section “Options after entering the destination” on page 230.

Entering a POI destination via a vicinity search

i POIs (points of interest) include gas stations, restaurants and banks, for example.

If the map is in position mode, you can search for POIs in the vicinity of the vehicle; if the map is in scroll mode, you can search for POIs in the vicinity of the crosshairs. For information on position and scroll mode, refer to the section “Position/scroll mode within the map display” on page 204.

Entry of a POI destination via a vicinity search is divided into the following steps:

1. Activating/deactivating POI categories
2. Selecting a POI in the POI list or
Selecting a POI in the map

Opening the Options menu

- ▶ In the map screen, press the controller (⊙).
The Options menu appears.

Opening the POI menu

- ▶ In the Options menu, select the menu item POI Icon.

The POI menu appears; you can now activate or deactivate POI categories or subcategories. Activating one or more categories or subcategories restricts the POI search to these categories or subcategories.

- ▶ **To close the menus:** Press the **BACK** button repeatedly until all of the menus are closed.



Map display shows night mode

- ① POI menu
- ② Icons of POI categories already activated

Activating/deactivating POI categories

- i** You can activate a maximum of five categories.
- ▶ In the POI menu ①, select categories from the five topmost menu items.
The corresponding categories will be activated or deactivated, depending on the previous status. The status display to the left of the menu item changes accordingly.
 - ◆ Display = category activated
 - ◆ Display = category deactivated

The icon for the activated category appears simultaneously in the display ②.

- ▶ **To deactivate all categories or subcategories:** In the POI menu, select the menu item Unmark All.
All categories or subcategories are deactivated.

After activating at least one category, you can select a POI in the map or in a list, see “Selecting a POI in the map” on page 226 or “Selecting a POI in the POI list” on page 226.

Menu item “Others”

- i** Selecting the menu item Others leads to a selection of further categories or subcategories.
- ▶ In the POI menu ②, select the menu item Others.
A category list appears.
- ▶ Select a category.
A subcategory list appears.
- ▶ Select a subcategory.
- ▶ **To close the subcategory and category lists:** Press the **BACK** button repeatedly until the POI menu appears again.
After selecting at least one category or subcategory, you can select a POI in the map or in a list, see “Selecting a POI in the map” on page 226 or “Selecting a POI in the POI list” on page 226.

Navigation

Entering destinations

Selecting a POI in the map

- ▶ **To close the menus:** Press the **BACK** button repeatedly until all of the menus are closed.

The map display appears. The available POIs in accordance with the activated categories/subcategories are shown as icons.

- ▶ **To select a POI:** Keep moving the map until the desired POI is in the crosshairs. To do so, proceed as described in the section “Moving the map/setting the map scale” on page 206.

- ▶ **To confirm selection:** Press the controller **○**.

If the selection is invalid, you will see an appropriate message.

- ▶ **To close the message:** Press the controller **○**.

You can select a POI in the map again.

If the selection is valid, entry of the destination is complete. Further options are now available, see the section “Options after entering the destination” on page 230.

Selecting a POI in the POI list

- ▶ **To call up the POI list:** In the POI menu, select the menu item Show POI List.

A list with POIs corresponding to the previously selected categories or subcategories appears.

The illustration below shows an example display with route filtering deactivated.



- ① Activate/deactivate route filtering
- ② Distance of the POI from the vehicle position
- ③ Direction to the POI
- ④ POI list

The illustration below shows an example display with route filtering activated.



- ① Direction in which you must leave the route to get to the POI

When route filtering is activated, the list will show only POIs along the route.

When route filtering is deactivated, the list will show additionally POIs not along the route.

- i** You can only activate route filtering when route guidance is active.

Entering destinations

- ▶ **To activate/deactivate route filtering:**
In the POI list, select the menu item Along Route.

Route filtering will be activated or deactivated, depending on the previous status. The status display to the left of the menu item changes accordingly.

- ◆ Display = function activated
- ◆ Display = function deactivated

- ▶ **To select a POI:** Select a POI in the list.

Entry of the destination is complete and you see the corresponding destination on the map. Further options are now available, see the section “Options after entering the destination” on page 230.

Entering a destination via the Address Book

Calling up the Address Book

- ▶ Open the Navigation main menu, see section “Opening the Navigation main menu” on page 209.

- ▶ In the Navigation main menu, select the menu item Destination.
A selection list appears.
- ▶ Select the menu item Address Book.
The Address Book appears.



① Address book

Selecting the destination in the Address Book

Option 1

- ▶ Select one of the following destination Address Book categories:
 - ◆ Home
 - ◆ Work

- ◆ Favorite Point 1
- ◆ Favorite Point 2
- ◆ Favorite Point 3
- ◆ Favorite Point 4

i If a category does not yet contain a destination, then that respective category cannot be selected. Refer to the section “Saving/deleting destinations in the Address Book” on page 247 to find out how to store destinations.

After you select a category, entry of the destination is complete and you see the corresponding destination on the map. Further options are now available, see the section “Options after entering the destination” on page 230.



Option 2

- ▶ Select the Address Book category Address List.

After you select the category, you will see a list of the destinations you have stored. This list contains a maximum of 200 entries.

Navigation

Entering destinations

- i** Refer to the section “Saving/deleting destinations in the Adress Book” on page 247 to find out how to store destinations.
- ▶ **To sort the list by date of storage or alphabetical:** Select the menu item Sort by Date or Sort Alphabetically.
The list is resorted and the text of the menu item and the icon to the left of the menu item change accordingly, both always show the current status.
 - ◆ Icon  = List is sorted by date of storage
 - ◆ Icon  = List is sorted alphabetical
- i** The menu item cannot be selected if the list contains fewer than three entries.
- ▶ **To select a destination:** Select a list entry.
Entry of the destination is complete and you see the corresponding destination on the map. Further options are now available, see the section “Options after entering the destination” on page 230.

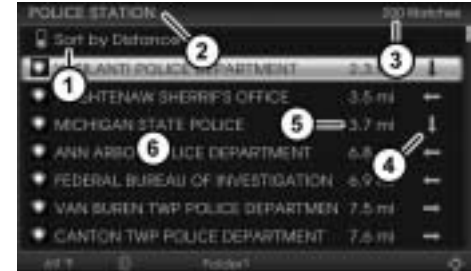
Entering an emergency destination

- i** Emergency destinations are Hospitals or Police stations, for example.
- ▶ Open the Navigation main menu, see section “Opening the Navigation main menu” on page 209.
- ▶ In the Navigation main menu, select the menu item Destination.
A selection list appears.
- ▶ Select the menu item Emergency.
The Emergency category list appears.



- ① Emergency category list

- ▶ Select the desired category, e.g. POLICE STATION.
A POI list appears.



- ① Sorting menu item
- ② Input progress display
- ③ Number of hits in the POI list ⑥
- ④ Direction to the POI
- ⑤ Distance to the POI
- ⑥ POI list

- ▶ **To sort the POI list:** Select the menu item ①.
The POI list is resorted.



The labelling of the menu item ① always shows the current sorting status. It will change with every selection.

Entering destinations

Possible labelings:

- ◆ Sort Alphabetically
- ◆ Sort by Distance

The sorting status is also identified by the icon to the left of the menu item ①.

- ◆ Icon  = List is sorted alphabetical
- ◆ Icon  = List is sorted by distance

i The menu item ① cannot be selected if the list contains fewer than three entries.


- ▶ **To select a POI:** Select a list entry.

Entry of the destination is complete and you see the corresponding destination on the map. Further options are now available, see the section “Options after entering the destination” on page 230.

Entering a destination via the map

Calling up the map

Option 1

- ▶ Briefly press the  button.

The map appears.

Option 2

- ▶ Press the  button.

The Navigation main menu appears.

- ▶ In the Navigation main menu, select the menu item Destination.


A selection list appears.

- ▶ In the selection list, select the item Map.


The map appears.

Selecting the destination in the map

- ▶ Keep moving the map until the desired destination is in the crosshairs. To do so, proceed as described in the section “Moving the map/setting the map scale” on page 206.

- ▶ **To confirm selection:** Press the controller .

If the selection is not a valid destination, you will see an appropriate message.

- ▶ **To close the message:** Press the controller .

You can select another destination in the map.

If the selection is a valid destination and it is either on a highway, on a motor way, on a bridge or in a tunnel, you will be prompted to confirm that you wish to accept the destination.

- ▶ To confirm the destination: Select Yes.

Entry of the destination is complete. Further options are now available, see the section “Options after entering the destination” on page 230.

- ▶ To reject the destination: Select No. You can select another destination in the map.

If the selection is a valid destination and it is not on a highway, on a main road, on a bridge or in a tunnel, entry of the destination is complete.

Further options are now available, see the section “Options after entering the destination” on page 230.

Navigation

Functions after entering the destination

i For information on general system operation, please refer to the chapter “Functional introduction” from page 17.

Options after entering the destination

After you have entered the destination, you will see the destination on the map and, on the right-hand side of the display, the Options menu with information about the destination.



Map display shows day mode

- ① Information about the destination (not shown if the destination has been entered via the map)
- ② Address of the destination
- ③ Options menu
- ④ Destination

The functions available in the Options menu ③ will vary depending on the following factors:

- ◆ Whether the destination was entered via the map
 - ◆ Whether route guidance to a destination is already active
- i** The illustration above shows the Options menu when route guidance is already active and the new destination was not entered via the map.

Functions possibly available in the Options menu:

- ◆ Set/replace destination, see page 230
 - ◆ Add waypoint (only available if route guidance is already active), see page 230
 - ◆ Add to Address Book, see page 231
 - ◆ Dial number, see page 231
- i** POIs (points of interest) include gas stations, restaurants and banks, for example.
- ◆ Adjust position (not available if the destination was entered via the map), see page 231

Set/replace destination

- ▶ In the Options menu, select the menu item Set Destination or Replace Destination.
- i** The menu item Set Destination is only available if route guidance is not yet active. The menu item Replace Destination is only available if a route to a destination has already been calculated.

Selecting either of these two menu items confirms the destination. If the menu item Replace Destination is selected, the previous destination and all waypoints are first discarded.

After the destination is confirmed, the system starts to calculate the route, see the section “Route calculation” on page 232.

Add waypoint

- ▶ In the Options menu, select the menu item Add Waypoint.
- i** This function adds the entered destination as a waypoint to an existing route. You can add a maximum of two waypoints to the route.

Functions after entering the destination



i The menu item Add Waypoint is not available if route guidance is not yet active or if two waypoints already exist.


The system adds the previously entered destination as a waypoint.

i A new waypoint is always added as the second last destination; the last destination is always the main destination. An existing waypoint is moved accordingly when a new waypoint is added.

If the vehicle is moving, the system calculates a new route, see the section “Route calculation” on page 232.

If the vehicle is not moving, the destination list appears. You can now change the position of the waypoint in the destination list.


▶ **To change the position of the waypoint:** Turn  the controller  until the desired position is reached.

▶ **To confirm the position:** Press the controller .

The system calculates a new route, see the section “Route calculation” on page 232.

▶ In the Options menu, select the menu item Add to Address Book.

i The menu item Add to Address Book cannot be selected if there are already 200 destinations saved in the category Address List of the address book.

The crosshairs center will be saved as destination in the category Address List of the address book. When saving, the system sets the standard icon  (red colored pin) in the map at the destination position; this icon remains visible in the map even after the save operation.

The system automatically uses the address as the destination name when saving. You can edit the name and assign a different icon later, see the section “Editing an entry” on page 254.

Dial number

i This function initiates a call to a POI. It is only available if the following conditions are met:

- ◆ The entered destination is a POI.
- ◆ The digital map contains the phone number of the POI.
- ◆ There is a mobile phone connected with the system.

POIs (points of interest) include gas stations, restaurants and banks, for example.

▶ In the Options menu, select the menu item Dial Number.

The system initiates the call.

Adjust position

i This function adjusts the destination position. It is not available if the destination was entered via the map.

▶ In the Options menu, select the menu item Adjust Position.


The Options menu is closed.

Add to Address Book


Navigation

Functions after entering the destination

- ▶ Keep moving the map until the destination position is in the crosshairs center. To do so, proceed as described in the section “Moving the map/setting the map scale” on page 206.

- ▶ **To confirm the position:** Press the controller .

If the position is invalid, you will see an appropriate message.

- ▶ **To close the message:** Press the controller .

You can adapt the destination position again.

If the position is valid, the Options menu reappears and all previously described options are once more available.

Route calculation

After the destination entry has been confirmed, route calculation starts.

During route calculation, the message Route Calculation in Progress Please wait. appears.

If the destination is too close to the current vehicle position, the message Destination is too close to the current location. Please use the map for guidance. appears.



After the route has been calculated, you will see the entire route including start/destination and any waypoints in the map. To the right of the map you will see route information and the Options menu.


Options menu



Map display shows night mode


- ① Remaining distance/journey time to destination
- ② Route information

- ③ Options menu
- ④ Waypoints (Yellow icons )
- ⑤ Destination (Icon )
- ⑥ Route
- ⑦ Current vehicle position

The following functions are available in the Options menu :

- ◆ Start route guidance, see page 232
- ◆ Other routes, see page 233
- ◆ Simulate route, see page 234
- ◆ Change route, see page 234

Start route guidance

 Route guidance is automatically started after a certain time without operation.

- ▶ In the Options menu, select the menu item Start Route Guidance.

The system starts route guidance, see the section “Route guidance” on page 235.

Functions after entering the destination

Other routes

In addition to already calculated routes, the system can calculate up to four other routes. This function is only available if the following conditions are met:

- ◆ The route does not contain any waypoints.
- ◆ Route guidance has not yet been started.

Calculating other routes

- ▶ In the Options menu, select the menu item Other Routes.

The system calculates the other routes.

After the routes have been calculated, you will see all calculated routes on the map and, on the right-hand side, route information as well as the route menu.

**Map display shows night mode**

- ① Current vehicle position
- ② Route "Minimize Freeway"
- ③ Route "Shortest Distance"
- ④ Route information display
- ⑤ Route menu
- ⑥ Colored symbol
- ⑦ Destination (Icon 🇩🇪)
- ⑧ Route "Shortest Time"

The various routes are indicated with differently colored symbols ⑥ in the route menu ⑤. The routes displayed on the map are also colored accordingly.

Information about a route

- ▶ Highlight a route in the route menu ⑤. You will see information about the highlighted route in the information display ④.

Route comparison

- ▶ In the Route menu, select the menu item Route Comparison.

The route comparison list appears. It contains the following reference information for each route:

- ◆ Journey time
- ◆ Journey distance
- ▶ **To close the list:** Briefly press the **BACK** button.

Selecting a route and starting route guidance

- ▶ Select a route in the Route menu or in the route comparison list. The Options menu appears again.

Functions after entering the destination

- ▶ In the Options menu, select the menu item Start Route Guidance.

The system starts route guidance, see the section “Route guidance” on page 235.

Simulate route

- i** This function simulates the journey to the entered destination.

- ▶ In the Options menu, select the menu item Simulate Route.

The system simulates the journey to the entered destination.

- ▶ **To cancel the simulation:** Briefly press the **BACK** button.

Change route

- i** You can use this function to add up to four waypoints to the route, to change the order of the waypoints, to show destinations in the map and to delete destinations.

- ▶ In the Options menu, select the menu item Change Route.

The Waypoint menu appears.

- ▶ Continue as described in the section “Change route” on page 239.

- i** For information on general system operation, please refer to the chapter “Functional introduction” from page 17.

Safety instructions

WARNING

During route guidance, the following factors may increase the accident hazard:

- ◆ Distraction from the traffic situation.
- ◆ Failure to observe traffic signs, traffic regulations and road safety facilities.
- ◆ Inappropriate audible driving recommendations or route guidance displays as a result of the reality not matching the data on the digital map, for example due to road works or modified road routing.

Always observe traffic signs, traffic regulations and road safety facilities. They always have priority over the audible driving recommendations or route guidance displays by the system.

General information

Route guidance starts after the route has been calculated and the appropriate menu item has been selected.

During route guidance, the system guides you to the destination by means of audible driving recommendations and route guidance displays.

If you leave the recommended route, the system automatically calculates a new route to your destination.

Audible driving recommendations

In the section “Guidance volume settings” from page 207, you will find information on the following:

- ◆ Setting the volume of the audible driving recommendations
- ◆ Activating/deactivating audible driving recommendations
- ◆ Calling up a current audible driving recommendation

Route guidance displays

The route guidance displays are only visible if the display is switched to map display and if the map display is in position mode and not scroll mode.

- i** For information on position mode, refer to the section “Position/scroll mode within the map display” on page 204.

- **To switch the display to map display or the map display to position mode:**
Press the  button.

The display switches and the system simultaneously outputs a current audible driving recommendation.

Sample displays

A number of sample displays are shown on the next page.

Navigation

Route guidance

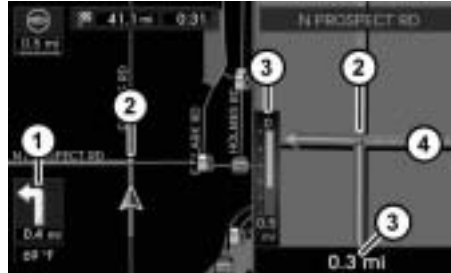


Map display shows night mode

- ① Remaining distance/journey time to destination
- ② Current vehicle position
- ③ Route
- ④ Waypoints (Yellow icon 📍)
- ⑤ Main destination (Icon 🏠)

Junction zoom

When a driving manoeuvre is imminent, the map display is automatically split. The left-hand side of the display shows the current map view, while the right-hand side shows the junction zoom. The split is automatically cancelled once the driving manoeuvre is completed.



Map display shows night mode

- ① Next driving manoeuvre and distance to it
- ② Point at which the next driving manoeuvre takes place
- ③ Distance indicator to the next driving manoeuvre
- ④ Right-hand side of the display with junction zoom

Functions during route guidance

i For information on general system operation, please refer to the chapter “Functional introduction” from page 17.

Suspending route guidance

▶ **To call up the map display in position mode:** Briefly press the **MAP GUIDE** button.

The map display appears.

▶ **To open the Options menu:** Press the controller **○**.

The Options menu appears.

▶ In the Options menu, select the menu item Cancel/Suspend.

Route guidance is suspended; you will see an appropriate display that disappears after a short time.

Resuming route guidance

i You can resume route guidance after suspension without having to re-enter the destination.

▶ **To call up the map display in position mode:** Briefly press the **MAP GUIDE** button.

The map display appears.

▶ **To open the Options menu:** Press the controller **○**.

The Options menu appears.

▶ In the Options menu, select the menu item Resume Guidance.

You will see an appropriate display that automatically disappears after a short time. The system then resumes route guidance.

Show route

i During route guidance, you can display the complete calculated route again.

▶ **To display the route again:** Press the **NAVI MENU** button.

The Navigation main menu appears.

▶ In the Navigation main menu, select the menu item Show Route.

You will once more see the map display with the calculated route and the Options menu.



Map display shows day mode

- ① Calculated route
- ② Options menu

Functions during route guidance

The following functions are now available in the Options menu:

- ◆ Going back to map screen and resuming route guidance:
 - ▶ Select the menu item Goto Map Screen.
- ◆ Changing the route:
 - ▶ Select the menu item Change Route.

The Waypoint menu appears. Please see the section “Change route” on page 239 for the rest of the description of this function.



- ◆ Displaying the “Turn by Turn” list:


Please see the following description.

Displaying the “Turn by Turn” list







- ▶ In the Options menu, select the menu item Turn by Turn.

The “Turn by Turn” list containing the following information about the route appears.

- ◆ Current vehicle position and the destination (Icon ) , including the journey time to the destination.
- ◆ If waypoints have been entered, the waypoints (Yellow icons ) , including the journey times to the destinations.
- ◆ Roads to be traveling, including the length of the route to be travelled.

 The route section list is not refreshed while it is on-screen.


Scrolling through the list

- ▶ **To scroll line by line:** Turn   the controller .
- ▶ **To scroll page by page:** Push   the controller .


Closing the list


- ▶ Briefly press the **BACK** button.


Reroute/detour

 You can use the reroute function to switch route guidance to one of the four possible alternative routes. The alternative routes must have been calculated in advance, see the section “Other routes” on page 233. You can use the detour function to block a specific stretch of the route section still to be travelled for the route guidance. The system then calculates a detour route if possible.

Calling up the Route menu

- ▶ **To call up the map display in position mode:** Briefly press the  button.

The map display appears.
- ▶ **To open the Options menu:** Press the controller .
- ▶ The Options menu appears.
- ▶ In the Options menu, select the menu item Reroute/Detour.

The Route menu appears, the current active route is marked with the icon . Now you can select another route or block a route section.

Functions during route guidance

Reroute

- ▶ Select one of the following menu items:
 - ◆ Shortest Time
 - ◆ Shortest Distance
 - ◆ Minimize Freeway
 - ◆ Minimize Toll Road

The system calculates a new route.

Detour

- ▶ Select one of the following menu items:
 - ◆ Detour 1 mi or Detour 1 km
 - ◆ Detour 2 mi or Detour 2 km
 - ◆ Detour 5 mi or Detour 5 km
 - ◆ Detour 10 mi or Detour 10 km





Depending on the menu item selected, the relevant stretch in the route section still be to travelled will be blocked and the system will start to calculate the route.



- i** The labelling of the menu items (mi or km) depends on the settings, see section “Map display settings”, subsection “Function Display Miles/Display Km” on page 259.

Switching the remaining distance/journey time display

- i** If the map display is in position mode, the system can either show the remaining distance/journey time to the main destination or to the next waypoint. You can use this function to switch the display.

**Map display shows day mode**

- ① Remaining distance/journey time indicator
Icon  = main destination
Yellow icon  = waypoint
- ▶ **To call up the map display in position mode:** Briefly press the  button.
The map display appears.
- ▶ **To open the Options menu:** Press the controller .
The Options menu appears.

- ▶ In the Options menu, select the menu item Distance to  or Distance to .
- The display is switched.

Change route

The following waypoint functions are available:

- ◆ Opening/closing the waypoint menu, see page 240
- ◆ Adding waypoints, see page 240
- ◆ Changing the order of the destinations, see page 241
- ◆ Showing destinations in the map, see page 242
- ◆ Deleting a waypoint or the main destination, see page 242
- ◆ Deleting all waypoints and the main destination, see page 242

Functions during route guidance

Opening/closing the waypoint menu



- ▶ Press the **NAVI MENU** button.

The Navigation main menu appears.

- ▶ **To open the waypoint menu:** In the Navigation main menu, select the menu item Change Route.

The Waypoint menu appears.



- ① Main destination (Icon )
- ② Waypoints (Yellow icons )
- ③ Current position

- ▶ **To close the Waypoint menu:** Select the menu item Done.

You will see the calculated route and the Options menu.

Further functions are available in the Options menu, for example start route guidance. Please see the section “Options menu” on page 232 for a description of the Options menu.

Adding waypoints

i You can add up to two waypoints to the route.

- ▶ In the Waypoint menu, select the menu item Add Waypoint.

A selection list appears. You now have several options for entering a waypoint, see the following descriptions.

You have further operation options after you have added waypoints, see the section “After waypoints have been added” on page 241

Entering a waypoint via the address

- ▶ Select the list item Address.
- ▶ Enter the address. Please see from the section “Entering a destination via the address” on page 210 onwards for the rest of the description of this function.

Entering a waypoint via the Previous Destinations

- ▶ Select the list item Previous Destinations.
- ▶ Select a destination. Please see from the section “Entering a destination via the Previous Destinations” on page 215 onwards for the rest of this function.

Entering a waypoint via Intersection input

- ▶ Select the list item Intersection.
- ▶ Enter the streets. Please see from the section “Entering a destination via Intersection input” on page 215 onwards for the rest of this function.

Entering a POI as a waypoint

- ▶ Select the list item Point of Interest. The POI main menu appears.
- ▶ **Option 1:** In the POI main menu, select the menu item Name and enter a POI destination. Please see from the section “Entering a POI destination via POI name” on page 216 onwards for the rest of this function.

Functions during route guidance

- ▶ **Option 2:** In the POI main menu, select the menu item *Category* and enter a POI destination. Please see from the section “Entering a POI destination via POI category” on page 220 onwards for the rest of this function.
- ▶ **Option 3:** In the POI main menu, select the menu item *Phone Number* and enter a POI destination. Please see from the section “Entering a POI destination via POI phone number” on page 223 onwards for the rest of this function.

Entering a waypoint via the Address Book

- ▶ Select the list item *Address Book*.
- ▶ Select a destination. Please see from the section “Entering a destination via the Address Book” on page 227 onwards for the rest of this function.

Entering an emergency destination as a waypoint

- ▶ Select the list item *Emergency*.
- ▶ Select a emergency category. Please see from the section “Entering an emergency destination” on page 228 onwards for the rest of this function.




Entering a waypoint via the map

- ▶ Select the list item *Map*.
- ▶ Select a destination in the map. Please see from the section “Entering a destination via the map” on page 229 onwards for the rest of this function.

After waypoints have been added

If the vehicle is moving, the new route is immediately calculated after a waypoint is added. The new waypoint was added as the second last destination. The main destination remains the last destination, an existing waypoint is moved accordingly.






If the vehicle is stationary, the Waypoint menu appears after a waypoint is added. The new waypoint was added as the second last destination. The main destination remains the last destination, an existing waypoint is moved accordingly.

- ▶ To change the position of the added waypoint: Turn  the controller  until the destination is at the desired position.
 - ▶ Press the controller .
- This confirms the position.

The following functions are now available:





- ◆ Changing the order of the destinations, see page 241
- ◆ Showing destinations in the map, see page 242
- ◆ Deleting a waypoint or the main destination, see page 242
- ◆ Deleting all waypoints and the main destination, see page 242

Changing the order of the destinations



- ▶ Highlight a destination in the Waypoint menu.
 - ▶ Push  the controller .
- The Options menu appears.
- ▶ In the Options menu, select the menu item *Change Order*.
 - ▶ Turn  the controller  until the destination is at the desired position.
 - ▶ Press the controller .
- This confirms the new position.

Functions during route guidance


Showing destinations in the map

- ▶ Highlight a destination in the Waypoint menu.
 - ▶ Push ➔ the controller .
The Options menu appears.
 - ▶ In the Options menu, select the menu item Show on Map.
The map display appears. It shows the selected destination.
 - ▶ **To change the map scale:** Turn  the controller  until the desired scale is reached.
 - ▶ **To return to the Waypoint menu:** Briefly press the **BACK** button.
-  The display automatically switches back to the Waypoint menu after a certain time without operation.

Deleting a waypoint or the main destination

- ▶ Highlight a waypoint or the main destination in the Waypoint menu.
 - ▶ Push ➔ the controller .
The Options menu appears.
 - ▶ In the Options menu, select the menu item Delete.
You will be prompted to confirm that you wish to delete the relevant destination.
 - ▶ Select Yes or No.
The destination will be deleted or retained, depending on the answer selected.
-  The Navigation main menu automatically appears if there are no more destinations.

Deleting all waypoints and the main destination

- ▶ Highlight a waypoint in the Waypoint menu.
- ▶ Push ➔ the controller .
The Options menu appears.
- ▶ In the Options menu, select the menu item Delete All.
You will be prompted to confirm that you wish to delete all waypoints.
- ▶ Select Yes or No.
All waypoints and the main destination will be deleted or retained, depending on the answer selected. The Navigation main menu automatically appears after the deletion.

i For information on general system operation, please refer to the chapter “Functional introduction” from page 17.

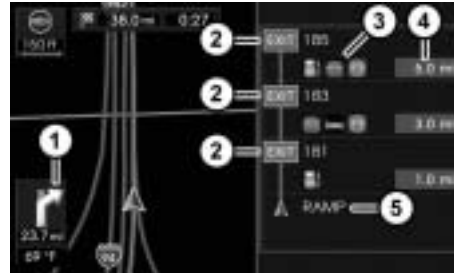
Freeway mode

i As soon as you start driving on a freeway, the system will automatically show you freeway information provided the function “Show Freeway Mode” is activated and no driving manoeuvre is imminent. Please refer to the section “Map display settings” on page 258 to find out how to activate or deactivate the function.

The freeway mode shows you the following:

- ◆ The next three stations on the freeway as icons, e.g. rest areas or exits,
- ◆ the distance to the stations,
- ◆ the available services at the stations,
- ◆ the freeway currently being driven on and
- ◆ turns as icons.

In the sample illustration below, the next three stations are exits.



Map display shows night mode

- ① Direction to turn to continue following the route (only visible if a route guidance is active)
- ② Icons for the next three stations
- ③ Icons showing the available services at the station
- ④ Distance to the station
- ⑤ Freeway currently being driven on

Turn List

i As soon as you start driving on a normal road, the system will automatically show you a turn list, provided the function “Show Turn by Turn” is activated and no driving manoeuvre is imminent.

If this function is activated, but the function “Show Freeway Mode” is deactivated, the system will show the turn list also when driving on freeways

Please refer to the section “Map display settings” on page 258 to find out how to activate or deactivate the function.

The turn list shows you the following:

- ◆ The next three turns,
- ◆ the kind of the turns as icons,
- ◆ the distance to the turns and
- ◆ the road currently being driven on.

Navigation

Functions independent of route guidance



Map display shows day mode

- ① Direction to turn to continue following the route (only visible if a route guidance is active)
- ② First turn with corresponding icon
- ③ Second turn with corresponding icon
- ④ Third turn or destination (as shown in the illustration) with corresponding icon
- ⑤ Distance to the third turn or to the destination
- ⑥ Distance to the second turn
- ⑦ Distance to the first turn
- ⑧ Road currently being driven on

Initiating a phone call to a POI

i POIs (points of interest) include gas stations, restaurants and banks, for example.

If the map is in scroll mode and the center point of the crosshairs points to a POI, you can initiate a call to the POI.







i This function is only available if the following conditions are met:

- ◆ The digital map contains a unique phone number of the POI.
- ◆ There is a mobile phone connected with the system.







For information on map scroll mode, refer to the section “Position/scroll mode within the map display” on page 204.

▶ **To call up the map display:** Press the **MAP GUIDE** button.

The map display appears. The map is set to position mode.

▶ **To set the map to scroll mode:** Push the controller  in any direction (    ).

The crosshairs appear.

▶ **To move the map:** Push and hold the controller  in any direction (    ) until the center of the crosshairs points to a POI.

▶ **To confirm the POI:** Press the controller .

The Options menu appears.

▶ In the Options menu, select the menu item POI Info.

A second Options menu appears.



Map display shows day mode

- ① Crosshairs
- ② Options menu
- ③ Menu item Dial Number

Functions independent of route guidance

- ▶ **To initiate a phone call to the POI:** In the Options menu, select the menu item Dial Number.

The system initiates the call.

Traffic information

If you have subscribed to the service XM NavTraffic®, the Driver Information System is able to:

- ◆ Automatically receive traffic information provided by XM® Satellite Radio,
- ◆ display the Traffic Info list, see page 245,
- ◆ display the traffic information in the map, see page 246 and
- ◆ take the traffic information into account during route guidance.

For further information about XM® Satellite Radio please refer to section “XM® Satellite Radio information” on page 56 and visit the following website:

www.xmradio.com

Displaying the Traffic Info list

- i** The Traffic Info list contains the available traffic information.

- ▶ **To call up the map display:** Briefly press the **MAP GUIDE** button. The map display appears.
- ▶ **To open the Options menu:** Press the controller **⊙**. The Options menu appears.
- ▶ In the Options menu, select the menu item NavTraffic Info. You will see the Traffic Info list.



- ① Road affected by the traffic incident
- ② Traffic incident
- ③ Sorting menu item
- ④ Distance from the vehicle position to the traffic incident
- ⑤ Direction to the traffic incident in a straight line
- ⑥ Icon for the traffic incident



Functions independent of route guidance

The labelling of the menu item ③ always shows the current sorting status. It will change with every selection.

Possible labelings:

- ◆ Sort by Distance
- ◆ Sort by Icon

The sorting status is also identified by the icon to the left of the menu item ③.

- ◆ Icon  = List is sorted by distance
- ◆ Icon  = List is sorted by icon

i The menu item ③ cannot be selected if the list contains fewer than three entries.

▶ **To show further information:** Select a list entry.

You will see the further information.

▶ **To go back to the Traffic Info list:** Briefly press the **BACK** button.

Displaying the traffic information in the map

i If the function “Show Traffic Info on Map” is activated, the traffic information will be shown in the map. Please refer to the section “Map display settings” on page 258 to find out how to activate or deactivate the function “Show Traffic Info on Map”.

The traffic information will be shown in the map in form of green, yellow and red lines beside the roads affected by the information.

Corresponding icons will be displayed also, the icons are the same as in the Traffic Info list, see previous illustration.



Map display shows day mode

- ① Road (red line)
- ② Yellow line (moderate traffic congestion)
- ③ Red line (heavy traffic congestion)
- ④ Green line (free flow traffic)
- ⑤ Incident icon

The position of the lines (on the right or on the left side of the road) shows which side of the road is affected.

i For information on general system operation, please refer to the chapter “Functional introduction” from page 17.

Address Book categories

The Address Book is divided into the following categories:

- ◆ Home
- ◆ Work
- ◆ Favorite Point 1
- ◆ Favorite Point 2
- ◆ Favorite Point 3
- ◆ Favorite Point 4
- ◆ Address List

You can assign each of the categories Home, Work, Favorite Point 1, Favorite Point 2, Favorite Point 3 or Favorite Point 4 a destination of your choice.


The category Address List holds a maximum of 200 destinations that you can define yourself.

Entering a destination via the map and saving it

Option 1 (for all categories)

i The following description assumes that there is no destination stored in the categories mentioned above. If there is already a destination stored, proceed as described in the section “Editing Address Book entries” page 254.

Selecting a Address Book category

- ▶ **To open the Navigation main menu:** Press the  button.
- ▶ In the Navigation main menu, select the menu item Edit Addr. Book.
The Address Book editing menu appears.
- ▶ In the Address Book editing menu, select one of the menu items Set Home, Set Work, Set Favorite Point 1, Set Favorite Point 2, Set Favorite Point 3 or Set Favorite Point 4.

or


- ▶ Select the menu item Address List followed by the menu item Add Address followed by the menu item Map.

In both cases, the map display appears.

Selecting the destination in the map








- ▶ **To move the map/set the map scale:** Proceed as described in the section “Moving the map/setting the map scale” on page 206.

Saving the destination

- ▶ **To open the Options menu:** Press the controller .
- ▶ In the Options menu, select the menu item Set Home or Set Work or Set Favorite Point 1 or Set Favorite Point 2 or Set Favorite Point 3 or Set Favorite Point 4 or Add Address.
The crosshairs position is saved as the destination in the previously selected category.

Saving/deleting destinations in the Address Book



When saving, the system sets the corresponding icon in the map at the destination position; the icons remain visible in the map even after the save operation.

- ◆  = Icon for Home
- ◆  = Icon for Work
- ◆  = Icon for Favorite Point 1 (Green colored pin)
- ◆  = Icon for Favorite Point 2 (Orange colored pin)
- ◆  = Icon for Favorite Point 3 (Blue colored pin)
- ◆  = Icon for Favorite Point 4 (Purple colored pin)
- ◆  = Icon for destinations saved in the Address Book category Address List (Red colored pin)


When saving a destination in the category Address List, the system automatically uses the address as the destination name. You can edit the name and assign a different icon later, see the section “Editing an entry” on page 254.

i You cannot edit the icon and name with the other Address Book categories.

Option 2 (only for the category Address List)

- ▶ **To call up the map display:** Press the  button.
- ▶ **To move the map/set the map scale:** Proceed as described in the section “Moving the map/setting the map scale” on page 206.
- ▶ **To save the crosshairs center as the destination:** Press the controller . The Options menu appears.
- ▶ In the Options menu, select the menu item Add to Address Book.

i The menu item Add to Address Book cannot be selected if there are already 200 destinations saved in this category.


The crosshairs center will be saved as destination in the category Address List. When saving, the system sets the standard icon  (Red colored pin) in the map at the destination position; this icon remains visible in the map even after the save operation.

The system automatically uses the address as the destination name when saving. You can edit the name and assign a different icon later, see the section “Editing an entry” on page 254.

Entering the destination by conventional means and saving it

i The following description assumes that there is no destination stored in the categories Home, Work, Favorite Point 1, Favorite Point 2, Favorite Point 3 and Favorite Point 4. If there is already a destination stored, proceed as described in the section “Editing Address Book entries” on page 254.

Selecting an Address Book category

- ▶ **To open the Navigation main menu:** Press the  button.
- ▶ In the Navigation main menu, select the menu item Edit Addr. Book.

The Address Book editing menu appears.

Saving/deleting destinations in the Address Book

► **Option 1:** In the Address Book editing menu, select one of the menu items Set Home, Set Work, Set Favorite Point 1, Set Favorite Point 2, Set Favorite Point 3 or Set Favorite Point 4.

► **Option 2:** In the Address Book editing menu, select the menu item Address List followed by the menu item Add Address.

After choosing an option, a selection list appears. Now you have several options to enter a destination.

Entering a destination

Entering a destination via the address

- Select the list item Address.
- Enter the address. Please see from the section “Entering a destination via the address” on page 210 onwards for the rest of the description of this function.

You have further operation options after you have entered a destination, see the section “After a destination has been entered” on page 250.

Entering a destination via the Previous Destinations

- Select the list item Previous Destinations.
- Select a destination. Please see from the section “Entering a destination via the Previous Destinations” on page 215 onwards for the rest of this function.
You have further operation options after you have entered a destination, see the section “After a destination has been entered” on page 250.

Entering a destination via Intersection input

- Select the list item Intersection.
- Enter the streets. Please see from the section “Entering a destination via Intersection input” on page 215 onwards for the rest of this function.
You have further operation options after you have entered a destination, see the section “After a destination has been entered” on page 250.

Entering a POI as a destination

- Select the list item Point of Interest.
The POI main menu appears.
- **Option 1:** In the POI main menu, select the menu item Name and enter a POI destination. Please see from the section “Entering a POI destination via POI name” on page 216 onwards for the rest of this function.
- **Option 2:** In the POI main menu, select the menu item Category and enter a POI destination. Please see from the section “Entering a POI destination via POI category” on page 220 onwards for the rest of this function.
- **Option 3:** In the POI main menu, select the menu item Phone Number and enter a POI destination. Please see from the section “Entering a POI destination via POI phone number” on page 223 onwards for the rest of this function.

You have further operation options after you have entered a destination, see the section “After a destination has been entered” on page 250.

Saving/deleting destinations in the Address Book

Entering a destination via the Address Book

- ▶ Select the list item Address Book.
- ▶ Select a destination. Please see from the section “Entering a destination via the Address Book” on page 227 onwards for the rest of this function.
You have further operation options after you have entered a destination, see the section “After a destination has been entered” on page 250.

Entering an emergency destination

- ▶ Select the list item Emergency.
- ▶ Select a emergency category. Please see from the section “Entering an emergency destination” on page 228 onwards for the rest of this function.
You have further operation options after you have entered a destination, see the section “After a destination has been entered” on page 250.

Entering a destination via the map

- ▶ Select the list item Map.
- ▶ Select a destination in the map. Please see from the section “Entering a destination via the map” on page 229 onwards for the rest of this function.
You have further operation options after you have entered a destination, see the following description.

After a destination has been entered

After you have entered a destination, you will see the destination on the map and, on the right-hand side of the display, information about the destination as well as the Options menu.








The Options menu offers access to the following functions:

- ◆ Saving the destination, see page 250.
- ◆ Adjusting the destination position, see page 251.
- ◆ Initiating a call to a POI, see page 251.
- i** POIs (points of interest) include gas stations, restaurants and banks, for example.

Saving the destination

- ▶ In the Options menu, select the menu item Set Home or Set Work or Set Favorite Point 1 or Set Favorite Point 2 or Set Favorite Point 3, Set Favorite Point 4 or Add Address.
The destination is saved.

When saving, the system sets the corresponding icon in the map at the destination position; the icons remain visible in the map even after the save operation.

- ◆  = Icon for Home
- ◆  = Icon for Work
- ◆  = Icon for Favorite Point 1 (Green colored pin)
- ◆  = Icon for Favorite Point 2 (Orange colored pin)
- ◆  = Icon for Favorite Point 3 (Blue colored pin)
- ◆  = Icon for Favorite Point 4 (Purple colored pin)
- ◆  = Icon for destinations saved in the Address Book category Address List (Red colored pin)

Saving/deleting destinations in the Address Book

When saving a destination in the category Address List, the system automatically uses the address as the destination name. You can edit the name and assign a different icon later, see the section “Editing an entry” on page 254.

i You cannot edit the icon and name with the other Address Book categories.

Initiating a call to a POI

i POIs (points of interest) include gas stations, restaurants and banks, for example. This function is only available if the following conditions are met:


- ◆ The entered destination is a POI.
 - ◆ The digital map contains the phone number of the POI.
 - ◆ There is a mobile phone connected with the system.
- ▶ In the Options menu, select the menu item Dial Number.
- The system initiates the call.

Adjusting the destination position


- ▶ In the Options menu, select the menu item Adjust Position.

The Options menu is closed.

- ▶ Keep moving the map until the destination position is in the crosshairs. To do so, proceed as described in the section “Moving the map/setting the map scale” on page 206.

- ▶ **To confirm the position:** Press the controller .

If the position is invalid, you will see an appropriate message.

- ▶ **To close the message:** Press the controller .

You can adapt the destination position again.

If the position is valid, the Options menu reappears and all previously described options are once more available.

Deleting destinations**Deleting all destinations in the category Previous Destinations**

- ▶ **To open the Navigation main menu:** Press the  button.

- ▶ In the Navigation main menu, select the menu item Edit Addr. Book.

The Address Book editing menu appears.

- ▶ In the Address Book editing menu, select the menu item Delete Previous Dest.



You will be prompted to confirm that you wish to delete all destinations in the category.



- ▶ Select Yes or No.



The destinations will be deleted or retained, depending on the answer selected.

Saving/deleting destinations in the Adress Book




Deleting a single destination or all destinations in the category Address List

- ▶ **To open the Navigation main menu:** Press the  button.
The Navigation main menu appears.
 - ▶ In the Navigation main menu, select the menu item Edit Addr. Book.
The Address Book editing menu appears.
 - ▶ In the Address Book editing menu, select the menu item Address List.
The destination list appears.
 - ▶ **To sort the list by date of storage or alphabetical:** Select the menu item Sort by Date or Sort Alphabetically.
-  The menu item cannot be selected if the list contains fewer than three entries.
- The list is resorted and the text of the menu item and the icon to the left of the menu item change accordingly, both always show the current status.

- ◆ Icon  = List is sorted by date of storage.
- ◆ Icon  = List is sorted alphabetical.

- ▶ Highlight a destination.
 - ▶ Push  the controller .
- The Options menu appears.

Showing the highlighted destination in the map

- ▶ In the Options menu, select the menu item Show on Map.
You will see the destination in the map.
- ▶ **To set the map scale:** Turn  the controller  until the desired scale is reached.
- ▶ **To close the map display:** Press the  button or do nothing for a certain time.

Deleting the highlighted destination

- ▶ In the Options menu, select the menu item Delete.
You will be prompted to confirm that you wish to delete the destination.
- ▶ Select Yes or No.
The destination will be deleted or retained, depending on the answer selected.

Deleting all destinations

- ▶ In the Options menu, select the menu item Delete All.
You will be prompted to confirm that you wish to delete all the destinations.
- ▶ Select Yes or No.
The destinations will be deleted or retained, depending on the answer selected.

Saving/deleting destinations in the Address Book

Deleting a destination in a category except Previous Destinations and Address List

- ▶ **To open the Navigation main menu:** Press the **NAVI MENU** button.
- ▶ In the Navigation main menu, select the menu item Edit Addr. Book.
The Address Book editing menu appears.
- ▶ In the Address Book editing menu, highlight one of the menu items Home, Work, Favorite Point 1, Favorite Point 2, Favorite Point 3 or Favorite Point 4.
- ▶ Push **➡** the controller **⊙**.
The Options menu appears.

Showing the highlighted destination in the map

- ▶ In the Options menu, select the menu item Show on Map.
You will see the destination in the map.

- ▶ **To set the map scale:** Turn **⏪** the controller **⊙** until the desired scale is reached.
- ▶ **To close the map display:** Press the **BACK** button or do nothing for a certain time.

Deleting the highlighted destination

- ▶ In the Options menu, select the menu item Delete.
You will be prompted to confirm that you wish to delete the destination.
- ▶ Select Yes or No.
The destination will be deleted or retained, depending on the answer selected.

Editing Address Book entries

i For information on general system operation, please refer to the chapter “Functional introduction” from page 17.



Selecting an Address Book entry

In all categories except Address List

- ▶ **To open the Navigation main menu:** Press the **NAVI MENU** button.
- ▶ In the Navigation main menu, select the menu item Edit Addr. Book.
The Address Book editing menu appears.
- ▶ In the Address Book editing menu, select one of the menu items Home, Work, Favorite Point 1, Favorite Point 2, Favorite Point 3 or Favorite Point 4.

The editing menu for the selected entry appears and you can edit the entry, see the section “Editing an entry” on page 254.

In the category Address List

- ▶ **To open the Navigation main menu:** Press the **NAVI MENU** button.
- ▶ In the Navigation main menu, select the menu item Edit Addr. Book.
The Address Book editing menu appears.
- ▶ In the Address Book editing menu, select the category Address List.
The destination list appears.
- ▶ **To sort the list by date of storage or alphabetical:** Select the menu item Sort by Date or Sort Alphabetically.
The list is resorted and the text of the menu item and the icon to the left of the menu item change accordingly, both always show the current status.
 - ◆ Icon  = List is sorted by date of storage.
 - ◆ Icon  = List is sorted alphabetically.

i The menu item cannot be selected if the list contains fewer than three entries.

- ▶ Select an entry.

The editing menu for the selected entry appears and you can edit the entry, see the following description.

Editing an entry

Editing menu



- ① Name data field
- ② Icon data field
- ③ Position data field
- ④ Phone number data field

The following functions are available in the editing menu:

- ◆ Displaying details, see page 255
- ◆ Editing the name, see page 255
- ◆ Switching the name display on/off, see page 256
- ◆ Assigning a different icon, see page 256
- ◆ Changing the destination position, see page 256
- ◆ Editing a phone number, see page 257

Displaying details

i If the entries in the position or name data field are too long, the system abbreviates the entries. You can display the complete entry using this function.

Displaying name details

- i** This function is only available if you edit an entry of the category Address List.
- ▶ **To open the Options menu:** Highlight the name data field in the editing menu and push **➡** the controller **⊙**.
The Options menu appears.

- ▶ In the Options menu, select the menu item Details.
The complete entry is displayed.
- ▶ **To close the details display:** Press the controller **⊙**.

Displaying position details

- ▶ **To open the Options menu:** Highlight the position data field in the editing menu and push **➡** the controller **⊙**.
The Options menu appears.
- ▶ In the Options menu, select the menu item Details.
The complete entry is displayed.
- ▶ **To close the details display:** Press the controller **⊙**.

Editing the name

i The name of the entry in the categories Home and Work cannot be edited. You can enter a maximum of 50 characters for a name.

Editing Address Book entries

- ▶ **To initiate editing:** Select the name data field in the editing menu.
The speller appears and you can now edit the name.
- ▶ **To enter a character:** Proceed as described in the chapter “PHONE”, section “Entering a name” on page 191.
- ▶ **To delete the last character entered:** Select the menu item **⊞**.
- ▶ **To delete all characters:** Select the menu item Delete All.
- ▶ **To complete editing:** Select the menu item OK.
If a Address Book entry with this name already exists, you will see an appropriate message.
- ▶ **To close the message:** Press the controller **⊙**.
You can edit the name again.

Editing Address Book entries

Switching the name display on/off

i The system displays Address Book entries in the map using appropriate icons. In addition to the icons, the system can also display the destination names. You can activate/deactivate this display, except for the categories Home and Work.

- ▶ **To open the Options menu:** Highlight the name data field in the editing menu and push ➔ the controller Ⓞ.

The Options menu appears.

- ▶ In the Options menu, select the menu item Name on Map.

The name display will be activated or deactivated, depending on the previous status. The status display to the left of the menu item will change accordingly.

- ♦ Display = function activated
- ♦ Display = function deactivated

Assigning a different icon

i The system displays Address Book entries in the map using appropriate icons. You can use this function to assign an Address Book entry an icon other than the standard icon.

You cannot assign a different icon for the entry in the categories Home, Work, Favorite Point 1, Favorite Point 2, Favorite Point 3 and Favorite Point 4.

- ▶ **To open the Icon menu:** Select the icon data field in the editing menu.

The Icon menu appears.

- ▶ **To select an icon:** In the Icon menu, highlight the desired icon and press the controller Ⓞ.


- ▶ **To confirm the selection and assign the icon:** Select the menu item OK.

- ▶ **To reassign the standard icon:** In the Icon menu, select the menu item Delete.

Changing the destination position

- ▶ Select the position data field in the editing menu.

The map display appears.

- ▶ **To set the map scale:** Turn  the controller Ⓞ until the desired scale is reached.

- ▶ **To move the map:** Push and hold the controller Ⓞ in any direction (↑ ↓, ← → or ↻).

The map moves accordingly.

- ▶ **To confirm the change:** Press the controller Ⓞ.

The editing menu appears again.

- ▶ **To cancel the change:** Press the **BACK** button.

- ▶ **To display address data in full:** Highlight the position data field in the editing menu and push ➔ the controller Ⓞ.

The Options menu appears.

- ▶ In the Options menu, select the menu item Details.

i The menu item Details can only be selected if the address data exceeds a certain length.


The address data is displayed in full.

Editing a phone number

i You can enter a maximum of 20 characters for a phone number.

- ▶ Select the phone number data field in the editing menu.

The speller appears and you can now edit the phone number.

- ▶ **To enter a character:** Proceed as described in the section “PHONE”, section “Entering a name” on page 191.
- ▶ **To delete the last character entered:** Select the menu item .
- ▶ **To delete all characters:** Select the menu item Delete All.
- ▶ **To complete editing:** Select the menu item OK.

Deleting a phone number/Initiating a call to a phone number

- ▶ Highlight the phone number data field in the editing menu.

- ▶ **To open the Options menu:** Push  the controller .

The Options menu appears.

- ▶ **To delete the phone number:** In the Options menu, select the menu item Delete.

The phone number is deleted.

- ▶ **To initiate a call:** In the Options menu, select the menu item Dial Number.

i The menu item Dial Number can only be selected if the following conditions are met:

- ◆ The Address Book entry contains a phone number.
- ◆ There is a mobile phone connected with the system.

Settings

- i** For information on general system operation, please refer to the chapter “Functional introduction” from page 17.

Opening the Settings menu

- ▶ Press the **NAVI MENU** button.
The Navigation main menu appears.
- ▶ In the Navigation main menu, select the menu item **Settings**.
The Settings menu appears.
- ▶ **To close the menus:** Press the **BACK** button repeatedly until all of the menus are closed.

You can access the following functions in the Settings menu:

- ◆ Guidance Volume settings, see the section “Guidance volume settings” on page 207.
- ◆ Map display settings, see page 258

- ◆ Ferry preference settings, see page 260
- ◆ Avoid Area settings, see page 260
- ◆ Displaying navigation information, see page 264
- ◆ Reset function, see page 264

Map display settings

Opening the Map Display settings menu

- ▶ Open the Settings menu, see the section “Opening the Settings menu” on page 258.
- ▶ In the Settings menu, select the menu item **Map Display**.
The Map display settings menu appears in which you can activate, deactivate and switch various functions. The functions are listed below.
- ▶ **To close the menu:** Briefly press the **BACK** button.



Function Display Mode

- i** You can use this function to switch the map display to day, night or automatic mode.
- ▶ Open the Map Display settings menu, see “Opening the Map Display settings menu” on page 258.
- ▶ In the Map Display settings menu, highlight the menu item **Display Mode**.
- ▶ Push **➡** the controller **⊙**.
The Options menu appears. The icon **⊙** to the left of a menu item indicates the currently active setting.
- ▶ Select the desired setting.
- i** If you select the setting **Auto**, the map display mode will be automatically switched as a function of the vehicle illumination.

Function Display Miles/Display Km

- i** You can use this function to switch the measuring unit of distance values from miles to kilometers or vice versa.
- ▶ Open the Map Display settings menu, see “Opening the Map Display settings menu” on page 258.
 - ▶ In the Map Display settings menu, select the menu item Display Miles or Display Km.

The measuring unit is switched and the text of the menu item and the icon to the left of it change accordingly, both always show the current status.


- ◆ Icon  = Measuring unit is set to miles.
- ◆ Icon  = Measuring unit is set to kilometers.




Function Time To Destination

- i** You can use this function to set the average vehicle speed used by the system as a basis for calculating the remaining journey time to destination. You can make separate settings for three different road types.

- ▶ Open the Map Display settings menu, see “Opening the Map Display settings menu” on page 258.
- ▶ In the Map Display settings menu, select the menu item Time To Destination.
The corresponding menu appears.



- ① Road type
 - ② Indicator
 - ③ Currently set speed
- ▶ **To select a road type:** Push **↑ ↓** the controller  repeatedly until the desired road type is highlighted.

- ▶ **To set the speed:** Turn  the controller  until the desired setting is reached.
The system saves this setting automatically.
- ▶ **To close the menu:** Push **←** the controller .

All other functions

- ▶ Open the Map Display settings menu, see “Opening the Map Display settings menu” on page 258.
- ▶ **To activate/deactivate the function:** Select the corresponding menu item.
Depending on the previous status, the function will be activated or deactivated. The status display to the left of the menu item changes accordingly.
 - ◆ Display = function activated
 - ◆ Display = function deactivated

The functions are listed below.

Settings

Function Show Avoid Area

If you activate this function, the system can show you the so-called “Avoid Areas”, see the section “Avoid Area settings” on page 260.

Function Show Traffic Info on Map

i This function depends on the validity of your subscription to the XM NavTraffic® service. If you have no subscription for the XM NavTraffic® service, activating this function will not show the traffic information on map as described in this manual.



If you activate this function, the traffic information will be displayed in the map on receipt, see the section “Displaying the traffic information in the map” on page 246.

Function Show Position Tracking

The system automatically tracks the vehicle position. If you activate this function, the system can show you the tracked vehicle position in the map over a distance of max. 124 mi (200 km) in the form of a dotted line.

Resetting position tracking

Resetting position tracking deletes all previously stored position information and restarts position tracking.

- ▶ Highlight the menu item Show Position Tracking.
- ▶ Push → the controller . The Options menu appears.
- ▶ Press the controller . Position tracking is reset.

Ferry preference settings

- i** With this function deactivated, route with ferry will be considered with lowest priority and only considered if there is no other route without ferry possible. With this function activated, route with ferry will be considered in the same priority as another route without ferry, so route with ferry could also show up as shortest route.
- ▶ Open the Settings menu, see the section “Opening the Settings menu” on page 258.

- ▶ **To activate/deactivate the function:** In the Settings menu, select the menu item Ferry Preference.

Depending on the previous status, the function will be activated or deactivated. The status display to the left of the menu item changes accordingly.

- ◆ Display = function activated
- ◆ Display = function deactivated

Avoid Area settings

i You can set up to ten areas which should be avoided for route guidance.

Opening the Avoid Area main menu

- ▶ Open the Settings menu, see the section “Opening the Settings menu” on page 258.
- ▶ In the Settings menu, select the menu item Avoid Area.
The Avoid Area main menu appears.



- ① List of Avoid Areas already stored
- ② Avoid Area main menu

After opening the Avoid Area main menu, the following options are available:

- ◆ Adding an Avoid Area, see page 261
- ◆ Deleting Avoid Areas, see page 262
- ◆ Editing Avoid Areas, see page 263

Adding an Avoid Area

- ▶ In the Avoid Area main menu, select the menu item Add Avoid Area.
A selection list appears. Now you can enter the desired area.

Entry of a area is divided into the following steps:

- ◆ Entering a destination as the starting point of the Avoid Area.
- ◆ Defining the Avoid Area.

Entering a destination as the starting point of the Avoid Area



- ▶ Select one of the menu items to enter a destination. Please see from the section “Entering a destination” on page 249 onwards.

Defining the Avoid Area










After entering the destination, you will see the map display with crosshairs. The crosshairs center is set to the destination.



Map display shows night mode

- ① Crosshairs

Now you can define the top left corner of the Avoid Area.


- ▶ **To set the map scale:** Turn  the controller  until the desired scale is reached.
- ▶ **To move the crosshairs:** Push and hold the controller  in any direction (     ).

The crosshairs moves accordingly.

- ▶ Select Yes or No.

The area will be deleted or retained, depending on the answer selected.

Deleting all areas

- ▶ In the Avoid Area main menu, select any area you like.
- ▶ **To open the Options menu:** Push → the controller .
- ▶ In the Options menu, select the menu item Delete All.
- ▶ Select Yes or No.

The Options menu appears.

You will be prompted to confirm that you wish to delete all areas.

All areas will be deleted or retained, depending on the answer selected.

Editing Avoid Areas

Opening the editing menu


- ▶ In the Avoid Area main menu, select the desired area.
The editing menu appears




- ① Name data field of the Avoid Area
- ② Position data fields of the Avoid Area
- ③ Display of the current status

Editing the name

- ▶ Open the editing menu, see the section “Opening the editing menu” on page 263.
- ▶ In the editing menu, highlight the menu item Avoid Area.

- ▶ Press the controller .

The speller appears and you can now edit the name.

- ▶ **To delete the last character:** Select the menu item .
- ▶ **To enter a character:** Proceed as described in the chapter “PHONE”, section “Entering a name” on page 191.
- ▶ **To delete all characters:** Select the menu item Delete All.
- ▶ **To complete editing:** Select the menu item OK.

Displaying name details

- ▶ **i** If the entry in the name data field is too long, the system abbreviates the entry. You can display the complete entry using this function.
- ▶ Open the editing menu, see the section “Opening the editing menu” on page 263.

Navigation

Settings

- ▶ In the editing menu, highlight the menu item **Avoid Area** and push ➔ the controller Ⓞ.

The Options menu appears.

- ▶ In the Options menu, select the menu item **Details**.

The complete entry is displayed.

- ▶ **To close the details display:** Press the controller Ⓞ.

Setting the status

- i** If you set the status to on, the navigation system will try to avoid the area for route guidance. If you set the status to off, the navigation system will not try to avoid the area for route guidance.

- ▶ Open the editing menu, see the section “Opening the editing menu” on page 263.

- ▶ In the editing menu, highlight the menu item **Use Avoid Area**.

- ▶ **To open the Options menu:** Push ➔ the controller Ⓞ.

The Options menu appears.

- ▶ In the Options menu, select the menu item **On** or **Off**.

Depending on the menu item selected, the status will be set accordingly.

Displaying navigation information

- ▶ Open the Settings menu, see the section “Opening the Settings menu” on page 258.

- ▶ In the Settings menu, select the menu item **NAVI Information**.

The Information menu appears.



- ① Geo-coordinates of the current vehicle position
- ② Current vehicle position in feet above sea level
- ③ GPS reception quality
- ④ Version number of the digital map

- i** Adequate GPS reception must be available for the displays ① and ②. The altitude display ② may differ from reality because the system calculates it using the GPS signals.

- ▶ **To close the Information menu:**

Press the **BACK** button.

Reset function

- i** This function resets the navigation settings to their factory settings. The Address Book data except the previous destinations will not be reset.

- ▶ Open the Settings menu, see the section “Opening the Settings menu” on page 258.

- ▶ In the Settings menu, select the menu item **Factory Reset**.

You will be prompted to confirm that you wish to reset the settings.

- ▶ Select **Yes** or **No**.

The settings will or will not be reset, depending on the answer you select.

North up view/Heading up view

i You can use this function to set whether the map is oriented to the north or the direction of travel.

- ▶ **To call up the map display:** Briefly press the  button.



The map display appears.

- ▶ **To open the Map Options menu:** Press the controller .

The Map Options menu appears.

- ▶ In the Map Options menu, select the menu item North Up View or Heading Up View.

The map orientation is switched and the text of the menu item and the icon to the left of the menu item change accordingly, both always show the current status.

- ◆ Icon  = fixed map orientation, north is always at the top.
- ◆ Icon  = dynamic map orientation, driving direction is always at the top.

Map mode

The following functions are available:

- ◆ Show Turn by Turn
- ◆ Show Freeway Mode

Function Show Turn by Turn

If you activate this function, the system can show you a turn list on the right-hand side of the display, see the section “Turn List” on page 243.

Function Show Freeway Mode

If you activate this function, the system can show you freeway information on the right-hand side of the display, see the section “Freeway mode” on page 243.

Activating/deactivating a function

- ▶ **To call up the map display:** Briefly press the  button.

The map display appears.

- ▶ **To open the Map Options menu:** Press the controller .

The Map Options menu appears.

- ▶ In the Map Options menu, select the menu item Map Mode.

- ▶ **To activate/deactivate a function:** Select the menu item Show Turn by Turn or Show Freeway Mode.

Depending on the previous status, the corresponding function will be activated or deactivated. The status display to the left of the menu item changes accordingly.

- ◆ Display = function activated
- ◆ Display = function deactivated

Navigation

Settings

General information	268
Tuner mode (FM, AM and XM Satellite Radio)	273
DISC and AUX mode	276
PHONE mode	279
Navigation mode	284
Various commands	292
Command overview	293

General information

i For information on general system operation, please refer to the chapter “Functional introduction” from page 17.

Safety instruction

WARNING

Stressful situations can affect the sound of your voice and could result in a phone call you want not being made quickly enough. The distraction could result in you losing control of the vehicle.

- ◆ Do not operate the phone function using voice control in an emergency.

Symbols

Some of the voice commands initiate a dialog between the user and the voice control system. A number of dialogs are given in the user manual by way of example.

The following symbols are used in the sample dialogs:

Symbol 


In a sample dialog between the voice control system and the user, this symbol indicates a voice command by the user.

Symbol 

In a sample dialog between the voice control system and the user, this symbol indicates an announcement by the system.

Symbol 

In a sample dialog between the voice control system and the user, this symbol indicates information shown on the display.

Symbol *Ping* 

In a sample dialog between the voice control system and the user, this symbol indicates the tone signalling that the voice control system is ready for commands to be entered.

Symbol ... *

Using your voice control system you can call up station names, phonebook entries or points of interest. These names are represented by ... * in the sample dialogs.


Symbol ... (1-X)

If a set of brackets containing a number range appears after the three points, these three points indicate a number within this range, for example “Disc ... (1-6)”.

Operating language


The voice control system can be operated in English language. It doesn't matter, which system language is set in the System settings.


General notes on operation

Voice control is activated by pressing the  button on the steering wheel. This allows you to operate the Driver Information System without taking your hands from the steering wheel.

The voice control system recognizes commands or numerical sequences regardless of who is speaking. It provides audible feedback and guides you through the functions.

If you say an incorrect or unavailable command, the voice control system responds with “Pardon?” and you can repeat the command. After the 3rd failed attempt, the system aborts the operation and the dialog is terminated with “Cancel”.

You can cancel a dialog at any time by pressing and holding the  button on the steering wheel or by saying the command “Cancel”.

i The button  on the steering wheel has no function when there is a phone call in progress.

You can also cancel dialogs by pressing any button on your Driver Information System. This does not apply to the volume control, which can still be used to adjust the volume when a dialog is active.

Please refer also to the sections “Activating voice control” on page 269, “Deactivating voice control” on page 269 and “Setting the volume” on page 270.

Voice input


To ensure optimum voice recognition by your voice control system, please observe the following points:


- ◆ Speak continuously and at normal volume. Avoid long pauses and excessive emphasis.
- ◆ Reduce interference by closing windows, doors and the sunroof.

- ◆ Avoid ambient noise in the vehicle when using the voice control system (e.g. conversations between other passengers going on at the same time).
- ◆ The faster the vehicle is traveling, the greater the ambient noise. You should therefore speak more loudly at higher speeds.
- ◆ Do not enter voice commands while an announcement is being made.
- ◆ The hands-free microphone is directed towards the driver's seat. The voice control system should therefore be operated by the driver.

General operation

Activating voice control


- ▶ Briefly press the  button on the steering wheel.

After the *Ping*  sounds, the voice control system is ready to receive commands. If you do not enter a command, the voice control system will prompt you for one by saying “Pardon?”.

i It is not possible to activate the voice control system while making or receiving a phone call.


Deactivating voice control

i You can quit the voice control system at any time, even during a dialog.


- ▶ **Option 1:** Press and hold the  button on the steering wheel for several seconds.
- ▶ **Option 2:** Say the command “Cancel”.

The voice control system confirms with “Cancel” and switches off.

On-screen symbol

As soon as the voice control system is activated and the ping has sounded, the symbol  appears in the bottom status line or in the navigation map.




- ① Voice control symbol  in the bottom status line

Voice control

General information



- ① Voice control symbol  in the navigation map

Setting the volume

i The volume of the voice control system is independent of the volume set for the phone/audio system.

You can adjust the volume of the announcements made by the voice control system, for example in response to variations in ambient noise during the journey.

- ▶ Activate the voice control system and say a command such as “*Help*”.
- ▶ During the subsequent announcement, turn the volume control on your unit to increase or lower the volume.

Commands

The commands that you can use to operate your voice control system are divided into two categories:

◆ Local commands

Local commands can only be used within the respective main function, for example “*Next track*” when in DISC mode.

You can call up the available local commands whenever you use the teleprompter. Please refer also to the section “*Help function (teleprompter)*” on page 271.

◆ Group commands

Group commands can be used within any operating mode. They cover the main functions, the individual operating areas of your Driver Information System and the help function.

Calling up the help function:

- ◆ *Help*

Group commands for the main functions:

- ◆ *Main menu*

Group commands for tuner mode:

- ◆ *Radio commands*
- ◆ *Station commands*
- ◆ *Frequency commands*

Group commands for DISC and AUX mode:

- ◆ *Media commands*
- ◆ *Disc commands*
- ◆ *Track commands*
- ◆ *Folder commands*


Group commands for PHONE mode:

- ◆ *Phone commands*


Group commands for Navigation mode:

- ◆ *Navigation commands*
- ◆ *Address book commands*
- ◆ *Destination search commands*
- ◆ *Route guidance commands*
- ◆ *Map commands*

Skipping sections of a dialog

i By briefly pressing the  button during an active dialog you can skip a voice announcement or return to the start of your voice input and repeat it.

Skipping voice announcements

- ▶ Briefly press the  button during a voice announcement by the unit.
The voice announcement is skipped and the voice control system is ready for the next voice input.

Repeating input

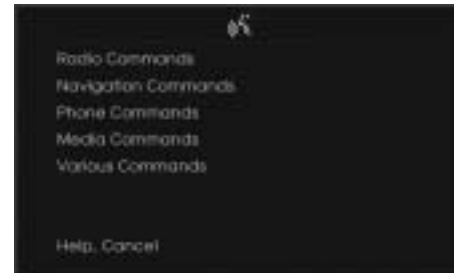
- ▶ Briefly press the  button during voice input.

The voice control system returns to the point in the dialog where you started your input and you can repeat it.

Configuring voice control

Switching the teleprompter on/off

i The visual help is called teleprompter, see example illustration below.



This function is described in the chapter “INFO”, section “Show Voice Commands (Teleprompter)” on page 308.

Switching confirmation prompts on/off

i Spoken commands are repeated by the voice control system when this function is switched on.

This function is described in the chapter “INFO”, section “Rpt. Voice Commands” on page 308.

Help function (teleprompter)

i The help function comprises an acoustic help component and a visual help component, also called teleprompter.

The voice control system features an integrated help function that is always available.

This help function is automatically activated as soon as

- ◆ the system does not understand a voice input

or

- ◆ voice input is not made in the dialog.

The help function can also be activated at any time using the command “Help”.

General information

Automatically activated help function

The help function is automatically activated as soon as the voice control system identifies a problem with the voice input. Help is then provided in two steps:

- ◆ **Step 1:**
The commands from the top operating level are displayed in the teleprompter.
You now have the option of reading the desired command and continuing the voice input. The second step of the help function follows if voice input is not continued or continued incorrectly.
- ◆ **Step 2:**
The commands are displayed in the teleprompter and said by the voice control system.

Calling up the help function and using it for operation

If you call up the help function using the command *"Help"*, the commands are both displayed in the teleprompter and said by the voice control system.

If you activate the help function and repeat one of the commands, you can then activate the help function again. This is how you access the available commands from the next operating level.

i You can also show the commands from an operating area directly using the group commands, for example *"Phone commands"*.

Operating picklists

The voice control system can display picklists to you on the screen, for example the channel list in the XM[®] tuner mode.

Scrolling through a picklist

You can scroll through any picklist using the commands *"Next page"*, *"Previous page"*, *"Back"*, *"First Page"* or *"Last Page"*.

i You can also scroll through a list using the controller, see chapter "Functional introduction", section "Lists" on page 29.

Selecting an entry in a picklist



Within picklists, you have the following two options for selecting an entry:

- ▶ **Option 1:** Say the contents as they are displayed in the row.
- ▶ **Option 2:** Say the command *"Entry...(1-8)"*.

i You can also select an entry in a list using the controller, see chapter "Functional introduction", section "Highlighting a menu item" on page 28.

Tuner mode (FM, AM and XM Satellite Radio)

Calling up tuner mode

- ▶ **FM or AM tuner:** Press the  button on the steering wheel and say the command “Radio” after the signal tone. FM or AM tuner mode is called up and the appropriate main menu appears on the display. The last selected station is played.
- ▶ **XM® tuner:** Press the  button on the steering wheel and say the command “XM” after the signal tone. XM® tuner mode is called up and the XM® Satellite Radio menu appears on the display. The last selected channel is played.

Tuner mode help

You can use the command “Radio commands” to listen to all the commands available for FM, AM or XM® tuner mode.

- ▶ Press the  button on the steering wheel and say the command “Radio commands” after the signal tone. The teleprompter is opened with the possible commands.


**Setting the waveband**

You can use the commands “FM” or “AM” to set the waveband.

See also “Setting the waveband” on page 275 in the section “Operating examples”.

Setting the FM mode

You can use the commands “FM1” or “FM2” to set the desired FM mode.


- ▶ Press the  button on the steering wheel and say the desired command after the signal tone. The desired FM mode is set.


Setting the frequency (FM or AM tuner mode only)

You can use the commands

- ◆ “FM ... (87.7-107.9)”
- ◆ “AM ... (530-1710)”

to enter a radio frequency directly.

 The frequency can be entered anywhere within the range of 87.7 - 107.9 MHz (FM) and 530 - 1710 KHz (AM).

- ▶ Press the  button on the steering wheel and say the command for the desired frequency after the signal tone, for example “FM 97.5”.


The unit tunes to the desired frequency. See also “Tuning to a radio station by specifying the frequency (FM or AM tuner mode only)” on page 275 in the section “Operating examples”.

Voice control

Tuner mode (FM, AM and XM Satellite Radio)

Next/previous station (FM and AM tuner mode only)


You can use the commands “*Next station*” and “*Previous station*” to tune the unit to the next or previous station stored in the presets.

- ▶ Press the  button on the steering wheel and say the desired command after the signal tone.

The unit tunes to the desired station.

Next/previous channel (XM® tuner mode only)


You can use the commands “*Next channel*” and “*Previous channel*” to tune the unit to the next or previous channel stored in the channel presets.

- ▶ Press the  button on the steering wheel and say the desired command after the signal tone.

The unit tunes to the desired channel.

Station search (FM and AM tuner mode only)


You can use the commands “*Seek up*” and “*Seek down*” to start the station search. The station search proceeds upwards or downwards and stops at the next receivable station.

- ▶ Press the  button on the steering wheel and say the desired command after the signal tone.

The unit tunes to the next receivable station.

Selecting stations/channels stored in the presets


You can use the command “*Preset...(1-16)*” to tune the unit to a station/channel stored in the corresponding preset.

- ▶ Press the  button on the steering wheel and say e.g. “*Preset 4*” after the signal tone.

The unit tunes to the station/channel stored in the preset 4.


Selecting channels (XM® tuner mode only)

You can use the command “*Channel ... **” to select XM® Satellite Radio channels directly by the channel name.

- ▶ Press the  button on the steering wheel and say the command “*Channel ... **” after the signal tone.

The unit tunes to the desired channel.

You can use the command “*Channel...(1-255)*” to select XM® Satellite Radio channels directly by the channel number.

- ▶ Press the  button on the steering wheel and say e.g. “*Channel 10*” after the signal tone.

The unit tunes to the channel 10.


You can use the command “*Channel by name*” to select a channel from a picklist, see also “Selecting a channel (XM® tuner mode only)” on page 275 in the section “Operating examples”.

Tuner mode (FM, AM and XM Satellite Radio)

Scan function (FM and AM tuner mode only)

i The Scan function searches through the selected band, stops at a receivable station, plays the station for five seconds and goes to the next receivable station. It will not search for FM HD Radio™ sub channels.


You can use the command “Scan” to start the Scan function.

▶ **To start the Scan function:** Press the  button on the steering wheel and say the command “Scan” after the signal tone.

The Scan function starts.

i The Scan function will stop automatically, if the frequency from where it has been started is reached again. It will also stop automatically, if you switch to another audio/video source. After switching back to AM/FM again, the system tunes to the frequency from where the Scan function has been started. You can also stop the Scan function manually.

Operating examples**Setting the waveband**

▶ Press the  button on the steering wheel.


◀ *Ping* ≡

🗣️ “FM.”

◀ “FM.”

The corresponding waveband is set.

Tuning to a radio station by specifying the frequency (FM or AM tuner mode only)

▶ Press the  button on the steering wheel.


◀ *Ping* ≡

🗣️ “FM ...(87.7-107.9).”

◀ “FM ...(87.7-107.9).”

The unit tunes to the specified radio station.

Selecting a channel (XM® tuner mode only)

▶ Press the  button on the steering wheel.

◀ *Ping* ≡

🗣️ “Channel by name.”

◀ “Channel by name.”

The first page of the channel list is displayed.



◀ “Please say the channel name”
Ping ≡


🗣️ “...”

◀ “...”

The unit tunes to the selected channel.

DISC and AUX mode

Calling up DISC or AUX mode


- ▶ **To call up DISC mode:** Press the  button on the steering wheel and say the command “*Disc*” after the signal tone.

DISC mode is called up and the appropriate main menu appears on the display.

If there is a disc inserted or there is a disc in the magazine of the changer, playback of the last track played will start.

- ▶ **To call up the last selected AUX mode:** Press the  button on the steering wheel and say the command “*External device*” after the signal tone.

The last selected AUX mode (iPod®, USB or AUX signal source mode) is called up and the appropriate main menu appears on the monitor.


- ▶ **To call a specific AUX mode:** Press the  button on the steering wheel and say one of the following commands after the signal tone:

- ◆ “*iPod*”
- ◆ “*USB*”
- ◆ “*AUX*”

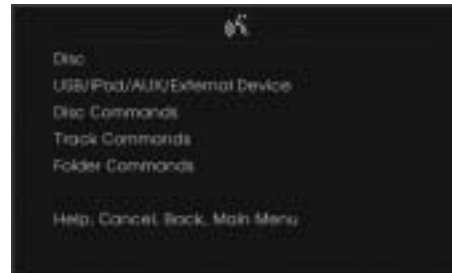
The corresponding AUX mode is called up and the appropriate main menu appears on the monitor.

DISC/AUX mode help

You can use the command “*Media commands*” to listen to all the commands available for DISC/AUX mode.


- ▶ Press the  button on the steering wheel and say the command “*Media commands*” after the signal tone.

The teleprompter is opened with the possible commands.



Next/previous disc

You can use the command “*Next disc*” or “*Previous disc*” to skip to the next or previous disc and automatically start playback.

- ▶ Press the  button on the steering wheel and say the desired command after the signal tone.

The system starts playback of the corresponding disc.


Selecting a disc directly

You can use the command “*Disc ... (1-6)*” to skip to the selected disc and automatically start playback.

See also “*Selecting a disc*” on page 277 in the section “*Operating examples*”.

Next/previous folder


You can use the command “*Next folder*” or “*Previous folder*” to skip to the start of the next or previous folder and automatically start playback.

- ▶ Press the  button on the steering wheel and say the desired command after the signal tone.

The system starts playback of the corresponding folder.

Skipping tracks forwards/backwards

You can use the command “*Next track*” or “*Previous track*” to skip to the start of the next or previous track and automatically start playback.

- ▶ Press the  button on the steering wheel and say the desired command after the signal tone.

The system starts playback of the corresponding track.


Selecting a track directly

You can use the command “*Track ... (1-99)*” to skip directly to a specific track. Playback of the track starts automatically. See also “Selecting a track” on page 278 in the section “Operating examples”.


Random Song/Album function


You can use the command “*Random song*” to activate the following functions:

- ◆ Random play of all tracks (audio disc or USB playback only)
- ◆ Shuffle song function (iPod® playback only)


 In the case of audio DVDs, random play is restricted to the tracks in the currently active group.

You can use the command “*Random album*” to activate random play of all tracks in the currently active folder (MP3 and wma disc playback only).

 Random play ignores tracks in subfolders within the currently active folder.

- ▶ **To activate the RandomSong/Album function:** Press the  button on the steering wheel and say the command “*Random song*” or “*Random album*” after the signal tone.


The corresponding function will be activated.

- ▶ **To deactivate the Random Song/Album function:** Press the  button on the steering wheel and say the command “*Random stop*”.

The Random Song/Album function will be deactivated.

Operating examples

Selecting a disc

- ▶ Press the  button on the steering wheel.

◀ *Ping* ⇐

◀ “Disc 3.”


◀ “Disc 3.”

The specified disc is played.

Voice control

DISC and AUX mode

Selecting a track

▶ Press the  button on the steering wheel.

◀ *Ping* 


 *“Track 10.”*

◀ *“Track 10.”*

The specified track is played.

i PHONE commands can be used only while a **Bluetooth®** mobile phone is connected to the system, see chapter “PHONE”, section “Pairing/connecting/disconnecting a mobile phone” on page 153.


Calling up PHONE mode

- ▶ Press the  button on the steering wheel and say the command “*Bluetooth*” after the signal tone.

PHONE mode is called up and the appropriate main menu appears on the display.

Phone help

You can use the command “*Phone commands*” to show all the commands that are available for your phone.

- ▶ Press the  button on the steering wheel and say the command “*Phone commands*”.

The teleprompter is opened with the possible commands.



Dialing a number

You can use the command “*Dial number*” to dial a phone number.


Use the numbers “*zero*” to “*nine*” to enter the number.

State the phone number in blocks of digits, separated by short pauses. After each sequence of numbers, the voice control system repeats the recognized digits. The recognized digits are also shown on the display.

See also “Dialing a phone number” on page 280 in the section “Operating examples”.

Redialing

You can use the command “*Redial*” to redial the last number dialed.

- ▶ Press the  button on the steering wheel and say the command “*Redial*” after the signal tone.

The system starts redials the corresponding number.

Storing numbers in the phonebook

You can use the command “*Store number*” to store phone numbers in your phone’s phonebook.

See also “Storing a number and assigning it to an existing phonebook entry” on page 281 and “Storing a number and creating a new phonebook entry” on page 282 in the section “Operating examples”.

Voice control


PHONE mode

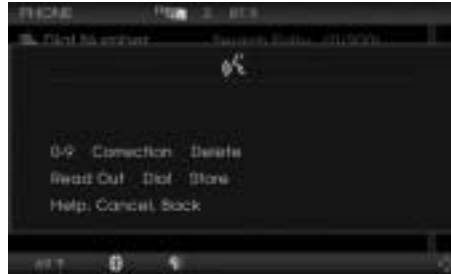
Calling a phonebook entry

You can use the command “Call... *1” or “Call by name” to place a call to a party directly from your phonebook. See also “Calling a number stored in the phonebook” on page 280 in the section “Operating examples”.

Operating examples

Dialing a phone number

- ▶ Press the  button on the steering wheel.
- ◀ *Ping* ⤵
- 🗣️ “Dial number.”
- ◀ “Dial number.”
Ping ⤵
- A number speller is displayed for entering the phone number.



- ◀ “Please say the number in groups of digits.”
Ping ⤵
- 🗣️ “1234”
- ◀ “1234”
Ping ⤵
- The teleprompter is opened with the recognized phone number (1234) in the first line and the number speller with some options for numbers.




- 🗣️ “Dial.”

The phone number is dialed.

Calling a number stored in the phonebook

- i** There are three options available. Using option 1, you can select a phonebook entry from a picklist. Using option 2 and 3, you can directly place a call without a picklist.

Option 1

- ▶ Press the  button on the steering wheel.

1. Name of the phonebook entry

🔊 *Ping* ⇐

🗣️ *"Call by name."*

🔊 *"Call by name."*

- The first page of the phonebook picklist is displayed.



🔊 *"Please say the name."*

Ping ⇐

🗣️ *"Alice Jeong."*

🔊 *"Alice Jeong."*

*Which category do you want to dial:
work, home, or mobile?"*

🗣️ *"Home"*

The corresponding number is dialed.

Option 2

- ▶ Press the button on the steering wheel.

🔊 *Ping* ⇐

🗣️ *"Call... *1"*

🔊 *"Call... *2."*

*Which category do you want to dial:
work, home, or mobile?"*

🗣️ *"Home"*

The corresponding number is dialed.

Option 3

- ▶ Press the button on the steering wheel.

🔊 *Ping* ⇐

🗣️ *"Call... *3 Home."*

🔊 *"Call... *4 Home."*

The corresponding number is dialed.

i Other available commands are:

- ◆ *"Call... *5 Work"*
- ◆ *"Call... *6 Mobile"*

Storing a number and assigning it to an existing phonebook entry

- ▶ Press the button on the steering wheel.

🔊 *Ping* ⇐

🗣️ *"Store number."*

🔊 *"Store number."*

Ping ⇐

- A number speller is displayed for entering the phone number.



1. Name of the phonebook entry
2. Name of the phonebook entry
3. Name of the phonebook entry
4. Name of the phonebook entry

5. Name of the phonebook entry
6. Name of the phonebook entry

Voice control

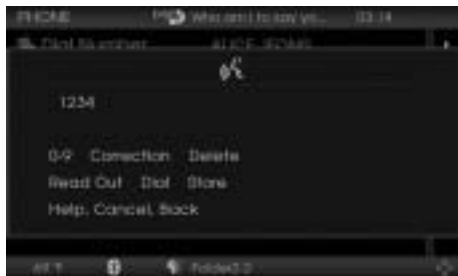
PHONE mode

▶ “Please say the number in groups of digits.”
Ping ↵

▶ “1234”

▶ “1234”
Ping ↵

□ The teleprompter is opened with the recognized phone number (1234) in the first line and the number speller with some options for numbers.



▶ “Store number.”

▶ “Do you want to add the number to an existing entry or create a new one?”
Ping ↵

▶ “Add to entry.”

□ The teleprompter is opened with the phonebook picklist.



▶ “Please say the name.”
Ping ↵

▶ “Alice Jeong.”

▶ “Alice Jeong.”
To which category do you want to add the number. Home, mobile or work?”

▶ “Home.”
A number was already entered. Do you want to overwrite this number?”

▶ “Yes.”

▶ “Yes.”
The entry was created.”

Storing a number and creating a new phonebook entry

▶ Press the  button on the steering wheel.

▶ Ping ↵

▶ “Store number.”

▶ “Store number.”
Ping ↵

□ A number speller is displayed for entering the phone number.



🔊 *"Please say the number in groups of digits."*
Ping ⤵

🗣️ *"1234"*

🔊 *"1234"*
Ping ⤵

- ☐ The teleprompter is opened with the recognized phone number (1234) in the first line and the number speller with some options for numbers.



🗣️ *"Store number."*

🔊 *"Do you want to add the number to an existing entry or create a new one?"*
Ping ⤵


🗣️ *"New entry."*

🔊 *"New entry.
To which category do you want to add the number. Home, mobile or work?"*

🔊 *"Home.
The entry was created."*

Navigation mode


Calling up Navigation mode

- ▶ Press the  button on the steering wheel and say the command “*Navigation*” after the signal tone.

The navigation system is called up and the appropriate main menu appears on the display.

Navigation mode help

You can use the command “*Navigation commands*” to listen to all the commands that are available for your navigation system.

- ▶ Press the  button on the steering wheel and say the command “*Navigation commands*” after the signal tone.

The teleprompter is opened with the possible commands.




Entering a destination

You have a number of options for entering destinations using the voice control system.

Entering state/province

You can use the command “*Enter state*” or “*Enter province*” to initiate a dialog for entering the state or the province for a destination.


- ▶ Press the  button on the steering wheel and say the command “*Enter state*” or “*Enter province*” after the signal tone.

- ◀ “*Enter state*” or “*Enter province*”.

- ▶ Please continue at “Entering the state or the province” on page 287 in the section “Operating examples”.

Entering a city

You can use the command “*Enter city*” to initiate a dialog for entering the city for a destination.

- ▶ Press the  button on the steering wheel and say the command “*Enter city*” after the signal tone.

If no state or province has been entered yet:

- ◀ “*No state or province entered yet*”.

- ▶ Please continue at “Entering the state or the province” on page 287 in the section “Operating examples”.

If a state or province has been entered already:

- ▶ Please continue at “Entering the city” on page 288 in the section “Operating examples”.

Entering an address

You can use the command *“Enter address”* to initiate a dialog for entering the address data for a destination.

See also “Entering a destination” on page 287 in the section “Operating examples”.

Entering a Point of Interest (POI) via the phone number

You can use the command *“Phone number search”* to initiate a dialog for entering a POI using phone numbers internally stored in the system.

See also “Entering Point of Interest (POI) via the phone number” on page 289 in the section “Operating examples”.

Entering a destination stored in the Address Book


You likewise have a number of options for entering destinations using a destination stored in the Address Book.

The following commands are available for this:

- ◆ *“Navigate to Address Book”* or *“Navigate to ...*1”*
See also “Entering a destination stored in the address book” on page 290 in the section “Operating examples”.
- ◆ *“Navigate home”* or *“Navigate work”*
See also “Entering a destination stored in the address book” on page 290 in the section “Operating examples”.
- ◆ *“Navigate to favorite point ...(1-4).”*
See also “Entering a destination stored in the address book” on page 290 in the section “Operating examples”.
- ◆ *“Navigate to previous destination”*
See also “Entering a destination stored in the address book” on page 290 in the section “Operating examples”.

Suspending route guidance


You can use the commando *“Suspend route guidance”* to stop an active route guidance session.

- ▶ Press the  button on the steering wheel and say the command *“Suspend route guidance”* after the signal tone.

The route guidance will be suspended.

Resuming route guidance

You can use the command *“Resume route guidance”* to resume a route guidance session.

- ▶ Press the  button on the steering wheel and say the command *“Resume route guidance”* after the signal tone.


The route guidance will be resumed.

1. Name of the address book entry

Navigation mode

Muting and reactivating navigation announcements


You can mute and reactivate the navigation announcements using the voice control system. The following commands are available for this:

- ◆ *“Guidance voice off”*
- ◆ *“Guidance voice on”*
- ▶ Press the  button on the steering wheel and say the desired command after the signal tone.
The system mutes or reactivates the navigation announcements.

Redefining a navigation route

The following commands are available for redefining the route for the route guidance session:

- ◆ *“Reroute”*
- ◆ *“Reroute shortest distance”*
- ◆ *“Reroute minimize freeway”*
- ◆ *“Reroute minimize toll road”*
- ◆ *“Reroute shortest time”*


- ▶ Press the  button on the steering wheel and say the desired command after the signal tone.


The route will be redefined.

Setting a detour

You can use the following commands to set a detour for a section of your route:

- ◆ *“Detour”*
- ◆ *“Detour 1 mile”* or *“Detour 1 kilometer”*
- ◆ *“Detour 2 miles”* or *“Detour 2 kilometer”*
- ◆ *“Detour 5 miles”* or *“Detour 5 kilometer”*
- ◆ *“Detour 10 miles”* or *“Detour 10 kilometer”*


 The usage of “miles” or “kilometer” depends on the map display setting, see section “Map display settings” on page page 258.

- ▶ Press the  button on the steering wheel and say the desired command after the signal tone.
The corresponding detour will be set.

Map display

Calling up the map display

The map display is called up using the command *“Display map”*.


- ▶ Press the  button on the steering wheel and say the command *“Display map”* after the signal tone.

You will see the map.

After calling up the map, you have various options for adapting it to the current conditions using the voice control system.

Zooming in/zooming out step by step


You can use the commands *“Map zoom in”* and *“Map zoom out”* to set the desired map scale step by step.

- ▶ Press the  button on the steering wheel and say the desired command after the signal tone.

The map will be zoomed to the next map scale.

Zooming to maximum/minimum


You can use the commands “*Map zoom maximum*” or “*Map zoom minimum*” to zoom the map to the corresponding scale.

- ▶ Press the  button on the steering wheel and say the desired command after the signal tone.

The map will be zoomed accordingly.

Zooming to the entire route


You can use the command “*Display route*” to show the map display with the entire calculated route and the Options menu.

- ▶ Press the  button on the steering wheel and say the command “*Display route*” after the signal tone.

You will see the map display with the entire calculated route and the Options menu.

Setting the map orientation


You can use the commands “*Map north up*” or “*Map heading up*” to orient the map either to the north or the direction of travel.

- ▶ Press the  button on the steering wheel and say the desired command after the signal tone.

The map orientation changes accordingly.


Switching traffic information on/off

You can use the commands “*Traffic Information On*” or “*Traffic Information Off*” to switch displaying of traffic information on or off.

- ▶ Press the  button on the steering wheel and say the desired command after the signal tone.

Operating examples

Entering a destination

- ▶ Press the  button on the steering wheel.
- ▶ *Ping* 𐄂
- ▶ *“Enter address.”*
- ▶ *“Enter address.”*

Entering the state or the province

- ▶ *“Please say the state or province name.”*
- ▶ *Ping* 𐄂
- ▶ *“Michigan”*
- ▶ *“Michigan”*
- ▶ The first page of a picklist is displayed for selecting the state or province.



- ▶ *“Michigan”*
- ▶ *“Michigan”*

Voice control

Navigation mode

Entering the city

▶ *"Please say the city name."*

Ping ⏪

▶ *"Westland"*

▶ *"Westland"*

The first page of a picklist is displayed for selecting the city.



▶ *"Westland"*

▶ *"Westland"*

Entering the street

▶ *"Please say the street name."*

Ping ⏪

▶ *"Reuther RD"*

▶ *"Reuther RD"*

The first page of a picklist is displayed for selecting the road.



▶ *"Reuther RD"*

▶ *"Reuther RD"*

If no house numbers are available:

▶ *"Do you want to start the route guidance to ...*?"*

Ping ⏪

Ping ⏪

▶ *"Yes."*

The navigation system uses the address as the destination and starts route guidance.

If house numbers are available:

You can enter a house number, see below.

Entering the house number

▶ *"Please say individual numbers from 0 to 9"*

A number speller is displayed for entering the house number.



▶ *"Please say the number in groups of digits."*

Ping ⏪

▶ *"78"*

🔊 “78”
Ping ⤵

- ❑ A number speller is displayed with the recognized house number (78) in the first line.



🗣️ “Start route guidance”

🔊 “Do you want to start the route guidance to ... *?”
Ping ⤵

🗣️ “Yes.”

The navigation system uses the address as the destination and starts route guidance.

Entering Point of Interest (POI) via the phone number

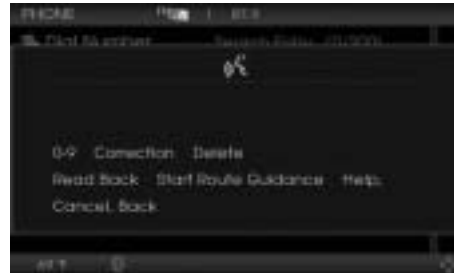
- ▶ Press the button on the steering wheel.

🔊 Ping ⤵

🗣️ “Phone number search.”

🔊 “Phone number search.”

- ❑ A number speller is displayed for entering the phone number.



🔊 “Please say the number in groups of digits.”
Ping ⤵

🗣️ “123.”

🔊 “123.”
Ping ⤵

- ❑ A number speller is displayed with the first part of the recognized phone number (123) in the first line and the number speller with some options for numbers.



🗣️ “456.”

🔊 “456.”
Ping ⤵

- ❑ A number speller is displayed with the total recognized phone number (123456) in the first line and the number speller with some options for numbers.

Navigation mode



🗣️ “Start route guidance.”

The entered destination is shown on the map.

🗣️ “Do you want to start the route guidance to the entered destination?”
Ping ⤵️

🗣️ “Yes.”

The navigation system uses the phone number and the corresponding address of the POI as the destination and starts route guidance.

Entering a destination stored in the address book

Option 1

▶ Press the button on the steering wheel.

🗣️ Ping ⤵️

🗣️ “Navigate to ...*1.”

🗣️ “Navigate to ...*.”

The navigation system starts route guidance to the address of the selected address book entry.

Option 2

▶ Press the button on the steering wheel.

🗣️ Ping ⤵️

🗣️ “Navigate home.” or “Navigate work.”

🗣️ “Navigate home.” or “Navigate work.”

The navigation system starts route guidance to the corresponding address.

Option 3

▶ Press the button on the steering wheel.

🗣️ Ping ⤵️

🗣️ “Navigate to favorite point ... (1-4).”

🗣️ “Navigate to favorite point ... (1-4).”

The navigation system starts route guidance to the corresponding address.

Option 4

▶ Press the button on the steering wheel.

🗣️ Ping ⤵️

🗣️ “Navigate to Address Book.”

🗣️ “Navigate to Address Book.”

The first page of a picklist is displayed for selecting an Address Book entry.

1. Name of the address book entry




🔊 *"Please say the name."*
Ping ⚡

🗣️ "..."

🔊 "..."

The navigation system starts route guidance to the selected address book entry.

Entering a destination via the "Previous destinations"

▶ Press the  button on the steering wheel.

🔊 Ping ⚡

🗣️ *"Navigate to previous destination."*

🔊 *"Navigate to previous destination."*

☐ The first page of a picklist is displayed for selecting the right recent destination name.



🔊 *"Please say the name."*
Ping ⚡

🗣️ "..."

🔊 "..."

🔊 *"Do you want to start the route guidance to the entered destination?"*
Ping ⚡


🗣️ "Yes."

The navigation system starts route guidance to the recent destination.

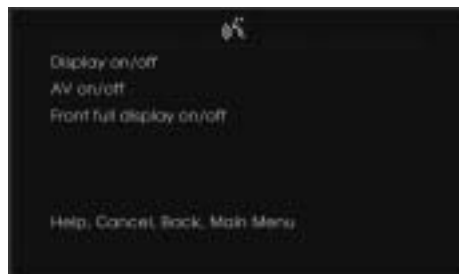
Various commands

Various commands help

You can use the command “*Various commands*” to listen to the available various commands.

- ▶ Press the  button on the steering wheel and say the command “*Various commands*” after the signal tone.

The teleprompter is opened with the possible commands.




Other available commands

Switching the display off/on

- i** Certain vehicle-specific information will continue to be displayed even when the display is switched off. Certain events or the initiation of certain functions will also result in corresponding displays that automatically disappear after a certain time.

You can use the commands “*Display off*” or “*Display on*” to switch the display off/on.


- ▶ Press the  button on the steering wheel and say the command “*Display off*” or “*Display on*” after the signal tone.

The display switches off or on.

Switching the display completely off/on

- i** Using this function, you can completely switch off the display. In contrast to the function “*Display off*”, no information will be displayed any longer when using this function.

You can use the commands “*Front full display off*” or “*Front full display on*” to switch the display off/on.

- ▶ Press the  button on the steering wheel and say the command “*Front full display off*” or “*Front full display on*” after the signal tone.

The display switches completely off or on again.


Switching audio/video playback off/on

- i** With the system switched on, you can switch audio/video playback off and on independently. Whether audio/video playback is switched on or off, you can switch the system on and off without affecting it.

The following functions are still available when audio/video playback is switched off:

- ◆ Voice control system
- ◆ PHONE
- ◆ Navigation
- ◆ INFO

You can use the commands “*AV off*” or “*AV on*” to switch the audio/video playback off/on.

- ▶ Press the  button on the steering wheel and say the command “*AV off*” or “*AV on*” after the signal tone.

The audio/video playback will be switched off or on.

Group commands**For the help function**

"Help"

For the main functions

"Main menu"

For tuner mode

"Radio commands"

"Station commands"

"Frequency commands"

For DISC and AUX mode

"Media commands"

"Disc commands"

"Track commands"

"Folder commands"

For PHONE mode

"Phone commands"

For Navigation mode

"Navigation commands"

"Address book commands"

"Destination search commands"

"Route guidance commands"

"Map commands"

Tuner commands**Mode selection commands**

"Radio"

"XM"

Help command

"Radio commands"

Wave band selection commands

"FM"

"AM"

FM mode commands

"FM1"

"FM2"

Station selection commands (FM and AM tuner mode only)

"Next station"

"Previous station"

"Seek up"

"Seek down"

Frequency selection commands (FM/AM tuner mode only)

"FM ... (87.7-107.9)"

"AM ... (530-1710)"

Preset selection command

"Preset...(1-16)"

Station storing command

"Scan"

Channel commands (XM® tuner mode only)

"Next channel"

"Previous channel"

"Channel ..."

"Channel...(1-255)"

"Channel by name"

DISC and AUX commands**Mode selection commands**

"Disc"

"External device"

"iPod"

"USB"

"AUX"

Help command

"Media commands"

Voice control

Command overview

Disc selection commands

"Next disc"

"Previous disc"

"Disc ... (1-6)"

Folder selection commands

"Next folder"

"Previous folder"

Track selection commands

"Next track"

"Previous track"

"Track ... (1-99)"

Random function commands

"Random song"

"Random album"

"Random stop"

PHONE commands

Mode selection command

"Bluetooth"

Help command

"Phone commands"

Dialing commands

"Dial number"

"Redial"

"Call by name"

*"Call ...^{*1}"*

*"Call ...^{*2} Home"*

*"Call ...^{*3} Mobile"*

*"Call ...^{*4} Work"*

Storing command

"Store number"

Navigation commands

Mode selection command

"Navigation"

Help command

"Navigation commands"

-
1. Name of the phonebook entry
 2. Name of the phonebook entry
 3. Name of the phonebook entry
 4. Name of the phonebook entry

Destination entering commands

"Enter state"

"Enter province"

"Enter city"

"Enter address"

"Phone number search"

Address Book commands

"Navigate home"

"Navigate work"

"Navigate to favorite point ... (1-4)"

"Navigate to previous destination"

"Navigate to Address Book"

*"Navigate to ...^{*5}"*

Route guidance commands

Suspending/resuming route guidance

"Suspend route guidance"

"Resume route guidance"

Route redefining

"Reroute"

"Reroute shortest distance"

"Reroute minimize freeway"

"Reroute minimize toll road"

"Reroute shortest time"

-
5. Name of the address book entry

Detour setting

“Detour”

“Detour 1 mile” or *“Detour 1 kilometer”*

“Detour 2 miles” or *“Detour 2 kilometer”*

“Detour 5 miles” or *“Detour 5 kilometer”*

“Detour 10 miles” or *“Detour 10 kilometer”*

i The usage of “miles” or “kilometer” depends on the map display setting, see section “Map display settings” on page page 258.

Navigation announcements

“Guidance voice off”

“Guidance voice on”

Map commands

“Display map”

“Map zoom in”

“Map zoom out”

“Map zoom maximum”

“Map zoom minimum”

“Display route”

“Map north up”

“Map heading up”

Traffic information commands

“Traffic Information On”

“Traffic Information Off”

Various commands

Help command

“Various commands”

Other available commands

“Display off”

“Display on”

“Front full display off”

“Front full display on”

“AV off”

“AV on”

Opening the INFO main menu	298
Vehicle functions	299
Car Settings	300
System Settings	304

Opening the INFO main menu

i For information on general system operation, please refer to the chapter “Functional introduction” from page 17.

▶ Press the **INFO** **PHONE** button.

Either the PHONE main menu or the INFO main menu appears.

If the PHONE main menu appears:

▶ Press the **INFO** **PHONE** button once more.

The INFO main menu appears.

Available functions

- ◆ Climate, see page 299
- ◆ Vehicle Height, page 299
- ◆ Suspension Info, see page 299
- ◆ Car Settings, see page 300
- ◆ System Settings, see page 304

INFO main menu



Climate

i You can't operate anything in this menu using the Driver Information System. You must use the corresponding vehicle controls. For further information, please see the Owner's Manual for the vehicle.

- ▶ Open the INFO main menu, see section "Opening the INFO main menu" on page 298.
- ▶ In the INFO main menu, select the menu item Climate.

You will see various information such as the exterior temperature, the temperature in the front seats and the fan setting.



Vehicle Height

i This function may not be available. It depends on the vehicle equipment. You can't operate anything in this menu using the Driver Information System. You must use the corresponding vehicle controls. For further information, please see the Owner's Manual for the vehicle.

- ▶ Open the INFO main menu, see section "Opening the INFO main menu" on page 298.
- ▶ In the INFO main menu, select the menu item Vehicle Height.

You will see the current vehicle height setting.



Suspension Info

i This function may not be available. It depends on the vehicle equipment. You can't operate anything in this menu using the Driver Information System. You must use the corresponding vehicle controls. For further information, please see the Owner's Manual for the vehicle.

- ▶ Open the INFO main menu, see section "Opening the INFO main menu" on page 298.
- ▶ In the INFO main menu, select the menu item Suspension Info.

You will see the current suspension hardness setting.



Car Settings

i The Car Settings may not be available. It depends on the vehicle equipment.

Opening the Car Settings menu

i Opening the Car Settings menu is not possible as soon as the vehicle exceeds a certain speed.

As soon as the vehicle falls below a certain speed, it will be possible again.

► Open the INFO main menu, see section “Opening the INFO main menu” on page 298.



- ① INFO main menu
- ② Car Settings menu item

► In the INFO main menu, select the menu item Car Settings.



① Car Settings menu

The following functions are available:

- ◆ Auto Door Lock, see page 301
- ◆ Auto Door Unlock, see page 302
- ◆ Twice Unlock, see page 303
- ◆ Door Lock Sound, see page 303
- ◆ Key Activates Alarm, see page 303
- ◆ Seat Easy Access, see page 303
- ◆ Steering Easy Access, see page 303

Car Settings menu while the vehicle is driving

If the Car Settings menu is already opened and the vehicle exceeds a certain speed, the highlight cursor disappears and all menu items are shown in gray color.

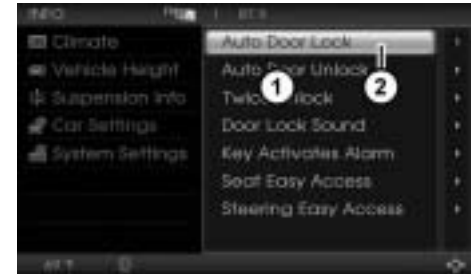


Illustration shows the Car Settings menu while the vehicle is standing

- ① Car Settings menu
- ② Highlight cursor

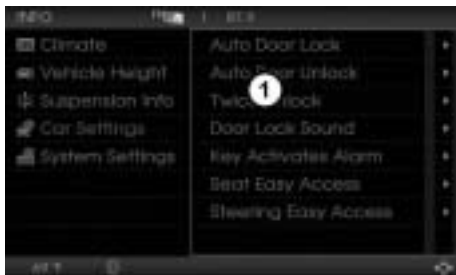


Illustration shows the Car Settings menu while the vehicle is driving

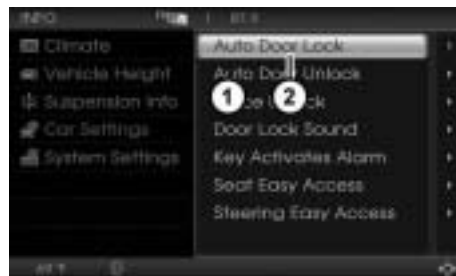
- ① Car Settings menu without highlight cursor and with menu items shown in gray color

Since all menu items are shown in gray color, none of them can be selected.

- ❗ You can always use the **BACK** button to go back to the next higher menu level.

Auto Door Lock

- ❗ This function automatically locks the doors as soon as a specific condition is met.
- ▶ Open the Car Settings menu, see section “Opening the Car Settings menu” on page 300.



- ① Car Settings menu
- ② Auto Door Lock menu item

- ▶ In the Car Settings menu, highlight the menu item Auto Door Lock.
- ▶ Push **➡** the controller **⊙** once.

The Options menu containing the respective setting options appears.



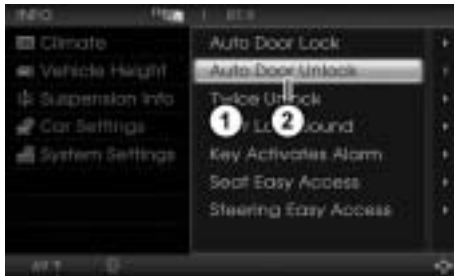
- ① Icon **⊙** for currently active setting
- ② Options menu

- ▶ **To change the setting:** Select another setting.
 - ◆ Off = Function is switched off.
 - ◆ Vehicle Speed = Doors will be locked as soon as a specific vehicle speed is exceeded.
 - ◆ Shift Lever = Doors will be locked as a function of the shift lever position.

Car Settings

Auto Door Unlock

- i** This function automatically unlocks the doors as soon as a specific condition is met.
- ▶ Open the Car Settings menu, see section “Opening the Car Settings menu” on page 300.



- ① Car Settings menu
- ② Auto Door Unlock menu item
- ▶ In the Car Settings menu, highlight the menu item Auto Door Unlock.
- ▶ Push ➡ the controller once.
The Options menu containing the respective setting options appears.



- ① Icon for currently active setting
- ② Options menu
- ▶ **To change the setting:** Select another setting.
 - ◆ Off = Function is switched off.
 - ◆ Key Removed = Doors will be unlocked as soon as the ignition key is removed from the key holder (vehicles without ignition) or from the ignition (vehicles with ignition).
 - ◆ Shift Lever = Doors will be unlocked as a function of the shift lever position.
 - ◆ Drivers Door = Doors will be unlocked when the driver's door is unlocked.

All other functions

All other functions can only be switched on or off; therefore, only a summarized description is provided. The individual functions are explained below.



- ① Car Settings menu
- ▶ Open the Car Settings menu, see section “Opening the Car Settings menu” on page 300.
- ▶ **To select a function:** In the Car Settings menu, highlight the desired menu item.
- ▶ Push ➡ the controller once.
The corresponding Options menu containing the respective setting options appears. The current setting is identified by the icon .

► **To switch the function on or off:**

Select the menu item On or Off.

Twice Unlock

With the function Twice Unlock activated, pressing the unlock button on the remote key once unlocks the driver's door; pressing it twice unlocks all doors.

With the function Twice Unlock deactivated, pressing the unlock button unlocks also the driver's door, but pressing it twice has no function.

Door Lock Sound

When the function Door Lock Sound is switched on, you will hear a signal tone when locking or unlocking the vehicle using the key remote.

Key Activates Alarm

When the function Key Activates Alarm is switched on, the vehicle alarm system will not only be activated when locking the doors using the key remote, but also when locking them using the physical key.

Seat Easy Access

The function Seat Easy Access automatically moves the driver's seat back a little as soon as the vehicle's ignition is switched off. When the ignition is switched back on, the seat moves back to the position you defined.

Steering Easy Access

The function Steering Easy Access automatically moves the steering wheel away from you as the vehicle's ignition is switched off. When the vehicle's ignition is switched on, the steering wheel moves to the position you defined.

System Settings

Opening the System Settings menu

- ▶ Open the INFO main menu, see section “Opening the INFO main menu” on page 298.



① INFO main menu

② System Settings menu item

- ▶ In the INFO main menu, select the menu item System Settings.
The System Settings menu appears.



① System Settings menu

The following functions are available:


- ◆ Display Off, see page 304
- ◆ Full Display Off, see page 305
- ◆ Display Dimming, see page 305
- ◆ Display Brightness, see page 306
- ◆ Language, see page 307
- ◆ Speed Dependent Vol., Show Voice Commands (Teleprompter) and Rpt. Voice Commands, see section “All other functions” on page 307.

Display Off

- i** You can switch off the display using this function. Certain vehicle-specific information will continue to be displayed even when the display is switched off. Certain events or the initiation of certain functions will also result in corresponding displays that automatically disappear after a certain time.

Switching the display off

Option 1

- ▶ Press and hold the rotary knob  on the headunit until the display switches off.

Option 2

- ▶ Open the System Settings menu, see section “Opening the System Settings menu” on page 304.











- ① Display Off menu item
- ② System Settings menu


- ▶ In the System Settings menu, select the menu item Display Off.

The display switches off.

Switching the display on

- ▶ **Option 1:** Press the controller .
- ▶ **Option 2:** Press one of the following main function buttons:

- ◆  or 
- ◆  or 
- ◆  or 
- ◆ 

- ▶ **Option 3:** Press the  button on the steering wheel.

Full Display Off

- i** Using this function, you can completely switch off the display. In contrast to the function "Display Off", no information will be displayed any longer when using this function.

Switching the display off

- ▶ Open the System Settings menu, see section "Opening the System Settings menu" on page 304.












- ① Full Display Off menu item
- ② System Settings menu

- ▶ In the System Settings menu, select the menu item Full Display Off.

The display switches off.

Switching the display on

- ▶ **Option 1:** Press the controller .
- ▶ **Option 2:** Press one of the following main function buttons:
 - ◆  or 
 - ◆  or 
 - ◆  or 
 - ◆ 
- ▶ **Option 3:** Press the  button on the steering wheel.


Display Dimming

- i** You can switch control of the display dimming using this function.
- ▶ Open the System Settings menu, see section "Opening the System Settings menu" on page 304.


System Settings



- ① Display Dimming menu item
- ② System Settings menu

- ▶ In the System Settings menu, highlight the menu item Display Dimming.
- ▶ Push → the controller  once.
The corresponding Options menu appears.



- ① Icon  for currently active setting
- ② Options menu

- ▶ **To switch the setting:** Select the other menu item.
 - ◆ **Auto Mode:**
When the vehicle light is switched off, the display is always at full brightness. When the vehicle light is switched on, the display brightness is set to 67% of the brightness set for day mode.
 - ◆ **Day Mode:**
When the vehicle light is switched off, the display is always at the brightness set for day mode. When the vehicle light is switched on, the display brightness is set to 90% of the brightness set for day mode.

i Please see the section “Display Brightness” on page 306 to find out how to set the brightness for day mode.

Display Brightness

i You can use this function primarily to set the display brightness for day mode. However it also influences the display brightness in auto mode. For further information, please refer to the section “Display Dimming” on page 305.

- ▶ Open the System Settings menu, see section “Opening the System Settings menu” on page 304.



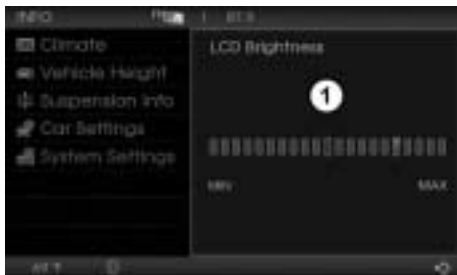
- ① Display Brightness menu item
- ② System Settings menu

- ▶ In the System Settings menu, select the menu item Display Brightness.
The Brightness Settings menu appears.

Brightness Settings menu

i After the Brightness Settings menu appears, the brightness is always switched to the value shown in the menu, regardless of how the display dimming is set. After the menu is closed, the brightness is switched back to the value corresponding to the set display dimming.

System Settings



① Brightness Settings menu

► **To set the brightness value:** Turn the controller until the desired setting is reached.

► **To exit the Brightness Settings menu:** Briefly press the **BACK** button. The system saves the settings automatically.

Language

i This function lets you switch the language in the display and the language for the navigation announcements. The language of the voice control system is independently from this setting. It is always set to the English language.

► Open the System Settings menu, see section “Opening the System Settings menu” on page 304.



① Language menu item
② System Settings menu

► In the System Settings menu, highlight the menu item Language.

► Push the controller once. The corresponding Options menu appears.



① Icon for currently active setting
② Options menu

► **To switch the setting:** Select the desired language.

All other functions



All other functions can only be switched on or off; therefore, only a summarized description is provided. The individual functions are explained below.

System Settings

- ▶ Open the System Settings menu, see section “Opening the System Settings menu” on page 304.



① System Settings menu

- ▶ **To select a function:** In the System Settings menu, highlight the desired menu item.
- ▶ Push ➡ the controller  once.
The corresponding Options menu appears. The current setting is identified by the icon .
- ▶ **To switch the function on or off:** Select the menu item On or Off.
The function will be switched on or off, depending on the menu item selected.

Speed Dependent Vol.

When this function is switched on, the system volume will be automatically adjusted depending on the vehicle speed.

Show Voice Commands (Teleprompter)

The visual help of the voice control system is called teleprompter. It shows available voice commands, see example illustration below.



Rpt. Voice Commands

Many commands are repeated by the voice control system when this function is switched on.

General information and operation 310

i The asterisk * identifies optional equipment.

Rear camera*

General information and operation

General information

The Driver Information System is connected to the rear camera, for the vehicles that are equipped.

Operation



WARNING

The camera has a wide angle lens to obtain wider visual field, so the actual distance may be different from that comprehended through the camera.

For safety, always check the front, rear, left, and right of the vehicle.

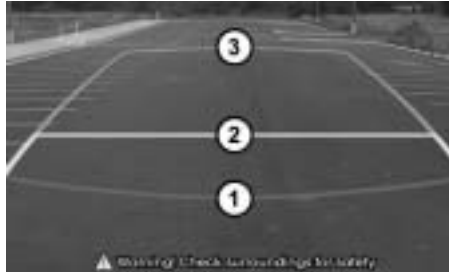
Switching the rear/front camera view on

i Switching the gear is described in detail in the vehicle's operation manual. Please pay attention to the corresponding descriptions and safety instructions in the vehicle's operation manual.

- ▶ **To switch the rear camera view on:**
Switch the gear in the position of **R**.

The display of the Driver Information System will switch to the rear camera view.

i The display in the vehicle may be different from the picture below.



- ① Red line
- ② Yellow line
- ③ Green line

The three lines ①, ② and ③ are showing the following distances, each measured from the rear bumper:

Red line ① = 1.64 ft (50 cm)

Yellow line ② = 3.28 ft (100 cm)

Green line ③ = 9.84 ft (300 cm)

- ▶ **To switch the front camera view on:**
Switch the gear in the position of **D** or **N**.
- ▶ If the display does not show the front camera view, press the vehicle's camera button.

i The vehicle's camera button has two states: On and Off. Everytime you you press the button, the state changes accordingly.

The display of the Driver Information System will switch to the front camera view, provided that the vehicle speed is less than 5 km/h.

i The display in the vehicle may be different from the picture below.



i While the rear/front camera view is shown on the display, pressing the button **MODE** on the steering wheel will toggle through the available audio/video sources in the background.

Switching the rear/front camera view off


i Switching the gear is described in detail in the vehicle's operation manual. Please pay attention to the corresponding descriptions and safety instructions in the vehicle's operation manual.

i The rear camera view will automatically switch off if the gear is switched to position **D** and the vehicle exceeds a certain speed.

► To switch the rear camera view off:

While the rear camera view is displayed, switch the gear to any position except **R** and **D**.

The display will return to the normal view.

i Pressing one of the main function buttons (e.g. button ) on the central control panel may also switch the rear camera view off.

► To switch the front camera view off:

If the front monitor shows the front camera view, press the vehicle's camera button.

The display will return to the normal view.

i The vehicle's camera button has two states: On and Off. Everytime you you press the button, the state changes accordingly.

Rear camera*

General information and operation

Technical data 314

Appendix

Technical data

Headunit

Dimensions (W x H x D)

Double DIN
W7" x H4.1" x D7,9"
(W178 mm x H104 mm x D200.7 mm)

Weight

6.06 lbs (27.5 kg)

Power consumption

Quiescent current (Headunit in sleep mode): 2.3 mA

Average supply current: 2.3 A

Antenna type

XM[®] Satellite Radio and GPS:
Roof mounted antenna.

FM/AM: Integrated glass antenna

Radio

Reception range FM

87.9 - 107.9 MHz, 200 kHz step

Reception range AM

530 - 1710 kHz, 10 kHz step

Display

Size (active area, W x H)

6.85" x 4.11" (174 mm x 104.4 mm)

Diagonal size

8" (202.9 mm)

Number of pixels

800 x 480

LCD type

Active matrix Liquid Crystal Display (LCD) using amorphous silicon thin film transistor (TFT).

Viewing angle

Bottom side: 60°

Top side: 30°

Left and right side: 45°

Common

Operating voltage range

10 V - 15 V (typically 12 V)

Temperature range for storage

-40° F - +176° F (-40° C - +80° C)

Temperature range for usage

-4° F - +149° F (-20° C - +65° C)

Operating humidity range

0 - 95%